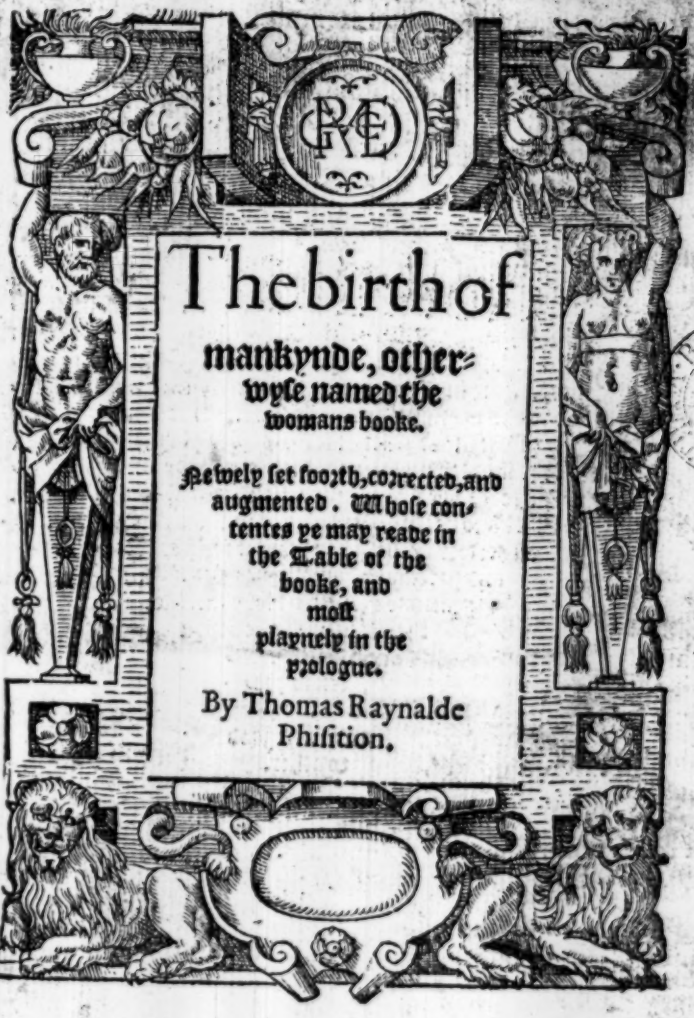


The birth of mankynde, otherwyse named the womans booke.

Newely set foorth, corrected, and augmented. Whose contentes ye may reade in the Table of the booke, and most playnely in the prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde Phisition.

BODLEIANA

53

L be it some Aristarchus maye perhappes fynde some lacke of faythfulnesse and diligence in this worke: yet ther is none so froward to denie but that there is some fruite & profite to be founde therein, seeing that it commeth now abrode much more enlarged & encreased, & more diligently corrected then it was before eyther in the Latine or in the Englishe. And where before in the other printes, there lacked matter necessarie to the openyng and declaration of the figures parteynyng to the inner partes: it is nowe so playnely set forth, that the simplest mydwyfe which can reade, may both understande for her better instruction, and also other women that haue neede of her helpe, the more commoditie.

Wherfore my desyre is, that it may be receaued and practised of mydwyues and all other matrones, with no lesse successe, then it is with good wyll and desyre written to profite and to do good to other.

Yſt, a Prologue to the women readers.
In this i. Chapiter is briefly declared the cõtentes of the firſt Booke. Capit. i.
In howe many coates the body is lapped or inuolued Cap. ii. Fol. i.
Here is declared what the Muſkles be. Cap. iii Fol. iiii.
Of the Bell called Peritoneum. Cap. iiii. Fol. v.
The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix. Cap. v. Fol. vi.
Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi. Fol. vii.
Of the mother port. Cap. vii. Fol. x.
Of the belleles of ſeede called the ſtones, with other thereto apperteynyng. Cap. viii. Fol. xi.
Of the ſeede bryngers. Cap. ix. eodem.
Of the office and vſe of theſe ſeede bryngers. Cap. x. Fol. xiiii.
Of the way by the which the ſeede is ſent from the ſtones, to the angles or corners of the matrix. Cap. xi. Fol. xix.
Here is declared the ſituation of the bladder in women, Cap. xii. Fol. xxi.

Of the vaynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes thereof. Item of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii. Fol. xxiiii.

Of the three calles or wrappers wherein the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii. Fol. xxix.

Which of the three Matrix vaines conteine the Termes, and how the mylke commeth to the womans breastes. Cap. xv. Fol. xxxv.

The declaration by letters of the figures folowyng, wherein be set forth to the eye euery part in woman mentioned in this booke before.

Of the fyrst figure. Fol. xlii.
Of the seconde figure. Fol. xlv.
Of the thirde figure. Fol. xlvii.
The fourth figure. Fol. xlviii.
The fyfth figure. Fol. xlix.
The syxth figure. eodem.
The. vii. viii. and. ix. figures. Fol. l.

¶ The Table of the seconde Booke.

Of the tyme of birth, and whiche is called naturall or vnnaturall. Cap. i. Fol. li.

Of easy and vneasy, difficult, or dolorous delyueraunce, & the causes of it, with the signes howe to know and foresee the same. Cap. ii. Fol. liii.

Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue harde

harde labour. Cap.iii. Fol.lvii.
Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made tollerable,easie,and without great paine. Cap.iiii. Fol.lxvii.
Howe the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue foorth, if it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap.v. Fol.lix.
Howe many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, & how to auoyde,defende, or to remedie the same. Cap.vi. Fol.lxxiii.
Of abortcementes or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it,and by what remedies it may be defended,holpen,& eased. Cap.vii. Fol.lxxvii.
Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap.ix. Fol.xc.
In the last Chapter of this booke be breefly rested certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the cheefe purpose entended in this present booke. Cap.x. Fol.xcv.

¶ The thyrde Booke.

N this fyrst Chapiter of this third booke is fyrst declared the matters therin cõteyned,& then how the infant newelye borne must be handled, norished, and loked to. Cap.i. Folio. xcviii.

Of the Nurse, and her mylke, and howlong the chylde shoulde sucke. Capit. ii. Fol. C.
Of diuers diseales & infirmities which chaunce to chyldren lately borne, and the remedies therefore. Cap. iii. Fol. Ciii.
Of the flire and ouermuch loosenes of the belly Fol. Ciiii.
To vnloose the chylde, beyng bounde. Fol. Cv.
Remedie for the cough and distillation or catarrhes of the head. Fol. Cvi.
Remedie for short wynde. Fol. Cvii.
Against wheales or bladders on the tong. eodē.
Of exulceration or cleiture, chappyng or chynyng of the mouth. Fol. Cviii.
Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares. Fol. eodem.
Of apostumation in the head. Fol. Cix.
Of the swelling or bolning of the eyes. eodem.
Of the scumme or whyte of the eye. eodem.
Against immoderate heate of the feuer. eodem.
Agaynst frettyng or gnawyng in the belly. Folio. Cx.
Agaynst swellyng of the body. eodem.
Agaynst often sneesyng. eodem.
Of whelkes in the body, and the cure. Fol. Cxi.
Against swelling of the coddes. eodem.
Agaynst swellyng of the Nauyll. eodem.
Agaynst vnsleepinesse. Fol. Cxii.
Agaynst yeryng or the hyckate. eodem.
Agaynst often parbreakyng by weakenesse and feeblenesse of the stomacke. Fol. Cxiii.
Agaynst fearful & terrible dreames. Fol. Cxiiii.

Agaynst

Againſt iſſuing foorth of the fundament gutte. Folio. eodem.
Againſt Tenaſmus. eodem.
Againſt wormes in the belly. eodem.
Of chafyng or galling of any place of the body. Folio. Cxvi.
Of the falling ſickneſſe. eodem.
Conſumption or pyning away of the bodye. Folio. Cxvii.
Of laſſitude, wearyneſſe, or heauineſſe of the chyldes body. eodem.
Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the palſy. Fol. Cxviii.
Againſt the ſtrangury or ſtone, with ſtoppyng of the vrine.
Of gogle eyes, or loking a ſquynt. Fol. Cxix.

¶ The fourth booke.

Of ſuche thinges the which ſhalbe entreated of in this fourth boke. Cap. i. Fol. cxx.
Of conception, & how many wayes it maye be hindred or letted. Cap. ii. Fol. eodem.
Howe manye wayes conception maye be letted, and how the cauſes maye be knowen. Capi. ii. Fol. Cxxi.

Howe

Howe to know whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceaued whether she be conceaued or no. Cap. iiii. Fol. Crriii.
Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v. Fol. Crriiii.
Of diuers bellifiyng receiptes. Fol. Crrvi.
Of the causes and remedies for dandruffe of the head. Fol. Crrvii.
To take awaye heere from places where it is vnseemely. Fol. Crrviii.
To do away freckens or other spottes in the face. Fol. Crrix.
To destroy wartes and suche lyke excrescenties on the face, or els where. eodem.
To cleare and clarifie the skinne in the handes, face, or other part of the body. Fol. eodem.
To souple and mollifie the ruggednesse of the skynne. Fol. Crrx.
Agaynst sodayne rysynges of pymples through vnkynde heate in the face or els where. eodē.
To kepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.
Of stynkyng breath. Fol. eodem
Of the ranke sauour of the armholdes. eodem.

¶ Here endeth the Table.

A Prologue to the women readers.

Here in the begynnyng of this presente Prologue, I wyl folowe the example of them, whiche when they byd any ghestes to dyner or supper, are wont fyrst to declare, what shall be their cheare, what fare, and howe manye dishes they shall haue, prayyng them to take it in good worth, and to looke for neither better ne worse then hath ben mentioned of: And euen so here wyll I do. Before that ye enter into the readyng of this litle treatise, I shall succinctly & in fewe wordes recite the summe and cheefe contentes of the same, with the vtilitie and profite whiche may ensue to the diligent and attentife ouerreader thereof, to the ende that ye of these thinges beyng first well aduertised, may haue the more or lesse courage to employ your labour in ouerlokyng and perusyng of the same. For commonly it doth occasionate anye man to be the more prompt, redy, and wyllyng to take payne, when he is assured or certified of the profite, purpose, and fruite thereof comming, and lykewyse it is a great pricke or allurement, entising and mouing a man to reade any booke, when he is somwhat first admonished of the matters comprehended and contayned therein. The entent of thauctour

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

The more part of this booke translated into Englishe three or foure yeres past.

shall vnderstande that about three or foure yeres paste, a certayne studious and diligent clarke, at the requeste and desyre of dyuers honest and sadde matrones, beyng of his acquayntaunce, dyd translate out of Latine into Englyshe a great parte of this booke, entiteling it accordyng to the Latine inscription De partu hominis, that is to saye, Of the byrth of mankynde: whiche we nowe do name, The womans booke: for so muche as the most part, or well neare all therein entreated of, doth concerne and touche onlye women: In whiche his translation he varied or declined nothyng at all from the steppes of his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelitie in translatyng, then choise or discretion at that tyme in admitting and allowyng manye thinges in the same booke, greatly needyng admonition and wary aduise or counsell to the readers, which otherwyse myght sometimes vse that for a helpe, the whiche should turne to a hinderaunce. Wherfore I reuoluyng and earnestlye reuisyng from top to toe the sayde booke, and herewithall consydering the manifolde vtilitie and profite whiche thereby mought ensue to all women (as touchyng that purpose) yf it were more narowlye looked ouer, and with a strayghter iudgement more exactly euerye thyng therein pondred and tryed, thought my laboure and paynes shoulde not be euyll employed, ne vnthankfully accepted and receaued of all honest, discrete and sage women, yf I after good and diligent perusing thereof, dyd correct and amende suche faultes in

The name of this boke.

it,

it, as seemed worthye of the same, and to aduise the readers what thinges were good, or intolerable to be vsed, whiche were daungerous, and whiche were vtterlie to be eschued. The which thing I haue not onlye so done, but ouer this, haue therevnto adioyned and annexed dyuers other more experimented and more familier medicines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke set forth, and euidently declared, all the inward partes of women (suche as were necessarye to be knowen to our purpose) and that not onlye in wordes, but also in liuelye and expresse figures, by the whiche euery part before in the booke described, maye in maner be as exactly and clearely perceaued, as though ye were present at the cutting open or Anothomie of a dead woman.

Many thinges annexed & newely added to this booke.

The contentes of the first booke.

And thynke not the vtilitie and profite of this fyrst booke, and knowledge thereof to be litle or of small value, but take it as the foundation and grounde, by the perceyuerance whereof, your wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe euerye thyng commeth to passe within your bodyes in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And farther, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearely perceaue the reason of manye diseases whiche happen peculiarlye to women, and the causes thereof, by whiche perceyueraunce, agayne ye shall haue the readyer vnderstandyng howe to withstand & remedie the sayde infirmities or diseases. For note ye well, that as there is no man whatsoeuer he be, that

Howe profitable ye first booke is.

The vtilitie of the perfect knowledge of Anothomie.

shall become an absolute and perfect Philition, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge of all the inwardes and outwardes of mans and womans body: euen so shall ye neuer groundlye vnderstande the matters contayned in the seconde booke, or anye other communication, or writing, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissaunce in the fyrst booke. Agayne when that a woman commeth to a Philition for counsell, concernyng somethyng that may be amisse in the parte: the aunswere of the Philition and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie, is manye tymes obscure, darke, and straunge, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, and fashion of the inwardes. And truely when a person is sicke or diseased in anye part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstand in what part the disease is, and howe that parte lyeth in the bodye. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther ingin and policie to inuent infinitelye the better howe the medicine shoulde be applied, & after the most profitable sort ministred and set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the wittines and artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of Phisicke, procedeth and springeth of the profounde knowledge of Anothomie. Therefore mine aduise & vtter counsel is, that al women in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstandyng of this fyrst booke:

The counsayle of the auctour to the readers.

well

well assuryng them that they shall not repent them of their small paynes bestowed in that behalfe. And to the ende that euery thing might be the playner and more easye to attayne vnto, I haue at the latter ende of the foresayd fyrst booke, set the figures whiche represent suche matters as were entreated of in the booke before, and also haue therto annexed a sufficient declaration and exposition by letters, of all partes and parcels conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the deliueraunce or byrth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perils, and other cases happening to the labouryng woman at that season, with remedyes and manyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out anye medicine beyng fyrst in the olde booke, but haue in manye places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisiche: and besides this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectuall medicines, suche as eyther I my selfe or other Phisitions beyng yet alyue at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermore, in this seconde booke ye may finde diuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that needeth) or to restrayne or stoppe the same when they issue more largely then nature doth require, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed. The cõtentes of the second booke. Many truely experimented medicines added to this booke.

In the thirde booke shalbe entreated, of the election and choyse, by certayne signes and tokens Thinges entreated of in the third booke.

kens of a good Nurse, whiche maye foster and bryng vp the chylde beyng borne. Item medicines encreasyng, diminyshing, attenuatyng, engrossyng, and amendyng the mylke in the Nurses brestes. Also remedyes for manye and sundrye diseases, whiche oft tymes chaunce vnto infantes after their byrth.

What is conteyned in ỹ fourth booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll somewhat commune of conception, with the causes hynderyng or fartheryng the same, shewyng certayne counsayle and remedyes whereby by the grace of God the vnfruitefull maye be made more fruitefull, and impedimentes of conception, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouercome, the woman beyng made the more apt to conceaue. And farther, in this last booke shall be vttered and sette foorth certayne embellesshyng receptes, concernyng only honest & healthsome decoration and clenlynesse, alwayes moste lowable and commendable in a woman, as to scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to kepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere from fallyng away, to take away heere from certayne places, where beyng it causeth some deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to subtyle and cleare the shynne in the face or other where, to remoue and do awaye spottes, frekens, and other suche lyke displeasaunt markes and tokens, to souple and mollifie the shynne beyng rugged and rough, with other moe suche lyke matters, to long here to be rehearsed, the whiche truely are not of anye prudent

dent person to be reiected, improued, or displayed, forasmuche as I teache nothyng in that place, but that only whiche may make to the honest, comely, and commendable conseruyng and maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and defying all fardyng, paintyng, and counterfait cast colours, whiche of some damnable and misproude people be dayly vsed, suche as by all meanes possible seeke and searche more the abominable and deuillish paynting & garish setting forth of their mortall carkases (the better thereby to commend it vnto the eyes of foolishe & fonde men) then by honest, sober, debonayre, & gentle maners so to demeane their lyfe, that they may thereby rather obtayne the loue, amitie, and hearti perpetuall fauour first of God, & then of all honest, discrete, and godly wyse men. Thus nowe to be short, I haue in as compendious maner as the matter would suffer, set before your eyes the cheefe and principall contentes comprehended in this litle volume. And now remayneth there nothyng els but onlye to require the benenolent fauour and good acceptation of this my labour and paynes spent in the compiling of these forsayde matters, praying, that as it hath ben to me paynefull in the composyng thereof, so it may be both pleasaunt and fruitefull to all women (for whose sake & only respect it is set forth) in the readyng thereof. Howbeit, I am not ignoraunt ne vnsure that many there are, before whose syght this booke shall finde small grace, and lesse fauour.

Agaynst paynting of womens faces.

The benenolencie of the reader required.

Harde to please mans iudgements

So harde a thing it is to wryte or endite anye matter whatsoeuer it be, that shoulde be able to sustayne and abyde the variable iudgement, and to obtayne or winne the constant loue and alowaunce of euerye man, especiallye yf it conteyne in it any noueltie or vnwont strangenes. Therefore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed, when that they enterprised anye new or straunge workes, were wont in the frunt of the same, with greate protestation, to inuocate and call vppon all the goddes and goddesses by name, requiring them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and prosper theyr attempted purpose, to the ende that by theyr obteyned fauour, it myght be the more acceptable and gratious to all suche as shoulde it beholde and reade. Whose example ryght necessary and needefull it were that I here shoulde dewoutly ensue and folowe, so that I coulde first beleue that by suche maner of inuocation, myght be allured and wonne the beneuolencie and wyllyng fauour of all suche in whose handes this present booke shoulde happen to fall. But truely I do suppose, that although I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye to be assistent the three louyng graces, or great Apollo, god. maister, and cheefe inuentour of the nature of all hearbes and other medicines: or Esculapius cheefe patrone and president in the worthye science of Phisicke: or wittie Mercurie with his doulce and sugred eloquencie, with sweete Suada, goddesse of all perswasion, with

The maner of Poets in tymes past.

The difficultie to conceyle ỳ good wyll of peruerse people.

with all other the goddes and goddesses what euer they be, in whom ingenious Poetes do faigne to be a maiestie, myght, and power, to encline the heartes of men for to delyte and take pleasure in any suche thyng whiche fyrst shalbe by their godhead alowed and fauoured. Though (I say) all these shoulde firmelye conspyre in one together, and bende them vtterly to the moste of theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and with their holye poeticall spirite to breathe ouer this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and waywarde wittes, that woulde (without all good reason) blame and improue the same vnneth yet seene, and muche lesse read. For who be they that geue so precipitat and headye iudgementes in all maner of matters, as suche (for the more parte) the whiche therein shall haue leaste cognoissaunce or knowledge, and take least payne in reading or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynste the whiche they be moste stoute, doughtie, and bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say onlye of them, that peraduenture shall here and there in the processe of this booke fynde any perticuler matters to reproue, and carpe, sometymes worthylye, and sometymes otherwyse: but also, yea, and that muche more of them, whiche generally without all exception, shall condemne and vtterlye reproue all the whole matter, some alleagyng that it is shame, and other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng suche

The lyght iudgements of many mē

Of them that vtterly do cōdemne this booke.

suche matters to be entreated of, so playnelye in our mother and vulgare language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead, and the derision of their wont secretes, by the detection and discoueryng whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the companye of women, and farther, in their communications to ieste and bourde of womens priuities, not wont to be knowen of them, with diuers others uche like cauillations and reasons: so that their opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppresse and vtterlye to condemne vnto darknesse for euer this booke, then to sende it foorth into lyght. Loe, suche is the lyght iudgement of them, the which in euery thyng, whereof may ensue both good and euyll, haue alwayes theyr eyes walkyng and firmely affixed and directed vppon the euyll, pyckyng and choosyng out the worst of euery matter, omitting and leauyng to speake of the beste, as the thyng which were nothyng to their purpose. If euerye thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed vppon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condemne and banyshe those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessarie, worthie, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it maye be peruerted and turned to an euyll vse, by them that be euyll and naught them selues, and

Aunswere to certayne cauilations.

Nothing so good but it may be abused.

and do abuse it: ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse thereof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynde. Fyre and water be two ryght necessary elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we coulde not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deede hath ben done, and perpetrated. By fyre hath ben consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreys. By water, swalowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate and drynke, to the moderate vsers thereof, doth minister and mayntayne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnmeasurable and vnsaciat gourmauntes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes, sickneſſe, and at the laſte death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr fierce enemies, the true wayfaryng man from the assault of the theefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterlye destroyed, the true mans throte by the theefe cutte. The moſt holye and sacred Byble teacheth nothyng but holyneſſe and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and breefelye, the hye waye to GOD. The blessed Sacrament of the alter was instituted and ordeyned by our Sauiour Jesus Christe, for a principall, earnest, lyuely, and moſte presente consolation and

Fyre & water abused.

Meate and drynke abused.

Weapons abused.

The Bible abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

comfort

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holye Scripture, and also the foresayde holye Sacrament, haue ben, be, and wyll be, the confusion and condemnation of a greate number of the abusers and indigne or vnworthy receauers of them both. Shoulde men, for the auoydyng all these foresayde inconueniences, and for the reasons abouesayde, condemne and bannyshe fyre and water, forsake their meate and drynke, suppresse and forbyd all maner of weapons, abolishe and set aside the holye Scripture, denye or vnregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thinke it. Therefore I say, the iudgement of that eye can neuer be egall and indifferent, whiche hath more respect and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen (onlye through the misuse of a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profites daylye and commonlye lyke to ensue to the wel vsers of the same, that that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disalowed for the sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also doeth testifie: To them that be good them selfe, euery thyng turneth to good, what euer it be is to them a sufficient matter and occasion therein to seeke the glorye of God, and the onlye profite of theyr euen Christen. And contrary, suche as be of yll disposition, in euerye thyng (be it neuer so good and salutarie) picketh out matter of mayntenaunce to theyr lewdenesse, turning matters of sadnesse and discretion, to foolyshe and pyrysshe prating contention.

Whose iudgements can neuer be indifferent.

To ỹ good euery thyng turneth to good.

The condition of such as be yll.

Wherefore

wherefore consyderyng that there is nothyng in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holye, or vertuous, but that it maye by wickednesse be abused, it shalbe no great wonder though this litle booke also, made, written, and set foorth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be vsed contrary to godlynesse, honestie, or thentent of the wryter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth onlye in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some yll disposed person shoulde wickedly abuse suche medicines as be here declared for a good purpose, to some deuyllishe and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, ryght soone wyll perceaue. The seconde poynt is, least that this booke happenyng into any lyght marchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuyse of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes, to the derision or ashaming of suche women as shoulde be in presence. &c. To these reasons can I make no better aunswere, then hath ben alledged before. Notwithstandyng, yet I say that I truste, yea, and do not doubte, but that this booke shall be so discretely diuided abrode, that none of them shall fall in any suche persons handling.

Wherein this booke may be abused.

The seconde poynt.

No light persons shal haue any of these bokes.

Agayne, yf any do chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue, as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall do, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynges neyther honest, good, ne godly, but speakyng vnreuerently, contemptuously,

tuously and vntymely of suche thinges, they do great iniurie, dishonour, and contumelye to nature: For he that declareth anye thyng in man or woman, priuie or apart, talkyng and rehearsing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall and deadly sinne, for so muche as contumeliously he ashameth and confoundeth his euen Christen, wherewith he bryngeth hym out of pacience, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeaunce, in rehearsyng of suche thinges, and after suche sorte, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and vere his mynde: wherefore for suche deedes, he shal not be accounted of the number of honeste and sage persons, but of the lyght and lewde. Yet another sorte is there, whiche woulde that neyther honeste ne vnhoneste men shoulde see this booke, for because (as they saye) be a man neuer so honest, yet by readyng heare of thinges to them before vnknowen, they shall conceaue a certayne lothsomnes and abhorring towardes a woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secrete, that they shoulde neede to care who knewe of it, neyther is there any part in woman more to be abhorred, then in man. And yf the knowledge of suche thynges whiche commonlye be called the womans priuities, shoulde diminishe the heartie loue and estimation of a woman in the minde of man, then by this reason, Philitians and Chyrurgians wyues shoulde greatly be abhorred and misbeloued of their husbandes. And I my

Of foolishe and lewde talkers.

Some wold that neither honest ne vnhonest should haue this booke.

my selfe lykewyse, whiche wryteth this booke, shoulde maruaylously aboue manye other abhorre or lothe women. But to be shorte, there is no suche thyng, neither any cause therto why. Wherefore all suche slender reasons set apart, let no woman be greeued who shall see or beholde this booke: for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy and knauishe that shall reade it, here I am sure he shall learne neither lewdenes, vnhappynes, ne knauerye. Howebeit, generally to all men, in whose handes this booke shall chaunce to come, I counsayle and exhorte, that they take not vpon them to tallie of any thynges therein contayned, but onlye where it may edifie, and be assuredly well accepted.

No matter who reade this booke.

Therhortation to all readers.

For women lightly wyll not gladlye heare of suche matters, by anye man vnlesse it be a Phisition of whom they require counsayle, or of theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no displeasure to anye honeste and louyng woman, that her husbande shoulde reade suche thynges: for manye men there be of so gentle and louyng nature towarde their wyues, that they wyll be more diligent and carefull to reade or seeke out anye thyng that shoulde do theyr wyues good, being in that case, then the women themselues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to interpretate and construe euerye thyng herein contayned, accordyng to the beste, and to vse euerye thyng herein entreated of, to the purpose wherefore it was wrytten. For truelye as

for

The consyderation why this booke was set forth.

for my part consyderyng the manyfolde, daylye, and imminent daungers and perilles the whiche all maner of women of what estate or degree so euer they be, in their labours do sustayne and abyde, yea, many times with peryll of theyr lyfe (of the whiche there be to many examples needelesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde be a verye charitable and laudable deede, and ryght thankfully to be accepted of all honourable and other honest matrones, yf by my paynes this little treatise were made to speake Englyshe, as it hath ben long syth taught to speake Dutche, Frenche, Spanyshe, and dyuers other languages. In the whiche countreys there be fewe women that can reade, but they wyll haue one of these bookes alwayes in readynes, where also this and other suche bookes be as commonly solde at euerye Stacionars shop, as anye other booke. The same commoditie then and profite whiche they in their regions do obtayne by enioying of this litle booke in theyr maternall language, may also ensue vnto all women in this noble Realme of Englande, it beyng lykewyse sette forth in our Englyshe speache, so that to them whiche diligently wyll aduert and geue heede to the instructions of this litle booke, it may supplie the roome and place of a good midwyfe, and aduyse them many tymes of sundrye cases, chaunces, and remedyes, wherein peraduenture ryght wyse women and good midwyfes shalbe full ignorant.

This booke set forth in many other languages.

And

And truely (as I haue ben credibly enfourmed by diuers persons worthye to be beleued) there be syth the first settyng foorth of this booke, right many honourable Ladies, and other worshipful Gentylwomen, whiche haue not disdayned the oftener by the occasion of this booke, to frequent and haunt women in theyr labours, carrying with them this booke in theyr handes, and caulyng suche part of it as doth cheefely concerne the same purpose, to be read before the Mydwyfe, and the reste of the women then beyng present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith the labouryng woman hath ben greatlye comforted, and alleuiated of her throwes and trauayle: Whose laudable example and doynges, woulde GOD that many proude Mydwyues woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche, as there be many ryght expert, diligent, wyse, circumspect and tender about suche businesse as apperteyneth to theyr office: So be there agayne many mo full vndiscrete, vnreasonable, churlishe, and farre to seeke in suche thynges, the whiche shoulde cheefely helpe and succoure the women in theyr moste paynefull laboure and throwes, through whose rudenesse and rashnesse onlye, I doubt not but that a great number of women in theyr labour speede worse then needed otherwyse. But here nowe let not the good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is spoken of the badde. For veryly there is no science, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beres,

How Ladyes & gentilwomen haue vsed this booke.

Of Mydwyues.

In euerye science ther be of all sortes.

and Asses, whiche as aboue all other haue most neede of informacion and teaching, so most commonly agayne, more then any other, wyll they kycke and wynce agaynst suche as woulde them reforme or reduce to any better way then they haue ben accustomed to in tymes past. And this do I say, for because that at the fyrst commyng abroade of this present booke, many of this sort of Wydwyues, moued eyther of enuie, or els of mallice, or both, diligented and endeuoured them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to fynde the meanes to suppresse and abrogate the same, makyng all women of theyr acquayntaunce (whom they thought to haue any knowledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng worth, and that it shoulde be a slaunder to women, forsomuche as therein was descried and set forth the secretes and priuities of women, and that euerye boye and knaue hadde of these bookes, reading them as openly as the tales of Robin hood. &c. The whiche sayinges, as they were false, and vntrue, and malitious allegations onlye of euyll hearted persons, to whom it was great greefe, that any by readyng thereof, shoulde see or vnderstande more then they hadde knowledge of before: So is it very soothe and true, that ryght dyuers of the better and more sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and verye desyrous to haue of them, and gaue faythfull counsell also vnto women of theyr familiier knowledge, to heare the booke read by some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it them

Some Wydwiues would haue had this booke forbidden.

The false surmises of the maleuolent.

The good Widuiues wer glad of this booke.

them selues. Whose honest and vertuous industry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and deserue the laude and prayse of all them that be laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthye and vyle ingratitude and dispituous enuye of the maleuolent, to be detested and vtterlye abhorred of all people: Whose malignaunt wittes, yf they myght preuayle of theyr purpose, woulde slay the good courages of all honest interprisers, in those matters and all other. And thus I conclude and make an ende of this rude Prologue, requiring the gentle readers therof, that yf they shall fynde any thing therin interpretable to diuers senses, to accept only that whiche may make to the best, accordyng to my meanyng.

Enuy and vnthankfulnes to be abhorred.

The first booke.

¶ In this first Chapter is breefely declared the contentes of the first booke.

ALthough that many thinges entreated of in this first booke, shal seeme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandyng of the seconde booke, yet then contrary do I ensure and certifie (as I haue sufficiently sayd in the Prologue) that the ignorant in the first, shalbe full blynde in the seconde, to the Whiche, the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The vtilitie of the first booke.

In this first booke then shalbe declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inWarde partes of a Woman, suche as are in them by nature dedicate and assigned to the propogation, conception, and bearyng of mankynde. In whō truely is the receptacle, & as ye Woulde say, the campe or feelde of mankynde to be engendred therein. And although that

The contentes of this booke.

that man be as principall mouer and cause of the generation: yet (no displeasure to men) the woman doth conferre and contribute muche more, what to the encreasement of the chylde in her wombe, and what to the nourysshment thereof after the byrth, then doth the man. And doubtlesse, yf a man wolde demaunde to whom the chylde oweth most his generation: we may worthyly make aunswere, that to the mother, whether ye regarde the paynes in bearyng, other els the conferrence of moste matter in begettyng.

The womā conferreth more the generatiō then man.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall reade certaine thinges, which in tymes passed haue ben corruptly, negligently, yea and very falsely written of, and of the whiche both men, yea and women them selues, haue conceaued very erronious and misopinions, as ye shall farther perceaue in the processe.

Many tings falsly writtē in times past.

Nowe therefore that we come to the declaration of the Organs generatiue in woman, it shalbe necessary to the bet-

ter vnderstandyng thereof, fyrste to shewe the discription of certayne thynges, without whose knowledge, this treatyse woulde be manye tymes the more obscure and darke.

¶ In howe many coates the body is lapped or inuolued. Cap. ii.

The principall coates of the body.

THe body of man or womā is inuolued or compassed vniuersally with three principall coates. Of the whiche, the first and vttermost is called the skinne, in Latine Cutis, With whom generally euery part of the body is clad and inclosed, the whiche yet in some part is more softe, delitate, and thinne, then in some other, and in some one person more stowre & styffe, then in some other agayne, for causes needelesse here to be rehearsed.

The superficial skinne

And ye shall note, that vpon the outward face and superficie of this skinne, there is yet another thinner skynne, in Latine

Latine commonly named Cuticula, & of some Efflorescentia cutis. This thinne skin is it, the which ye see ryse lyke a bladder when any part of the bodye is blistered with fyre or hot water, so that betwene this thinne skin and the very skinne, is conteined the water which resorteth to the place by the violence of the fyre or heat, the which thin skin also we vse to pricke to let the water issue foorth: also the same that skaleth or pylleth of the hands or other partes of the body being scabbed & begynnyng to drye. Item the skin that the Adders do cast in the sommer time, is the foresaid thin superficiall skin, & not the verye substanciall skyn of the body in deede. For the verye skyn neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great violēce, as by flaying, lyke as beastes be flayne at the butchers, & as they flay conies. And againe, the thin or superficiall skin, skale it or fal it of neuer so often, yet in the place of it is reingendred new, as good alwayes as the former. But if the second and very skin be perished, by

The verye skin skaleth not of.

The very skin perished, neuer restored.

cuttyng or apostumation, or by other casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe alwayes in the place where it is, as it were a seame, skarre, or marke, smothe and harder then the other skynne, and without naturall powers.

The second coate.

The seconde inuestiture or clothyng of the body, is named the fleshye skin, in Latin Membrana carnosa, so called, for because that it conteyneth and is compassed of fleshynes, then any other kell or skin in all the bodie, & is, as it were, the lynyng to the forsaide Cutis, that is the very skin immediatly aboue hym, the very skin and it beyng both basted together, by a great number of small fybres or cordes enterlasing these two skinnes, so that with great payne vnneth may they be separated the one frō the other. And farther, betwene these two skins runne a great number of vaynes, artires, and skinnes, in euery part of the body, so that the great vaynes whiche appeare so manyfestly to your syght in

The fleshye skynne.

the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betweene the proper skinne and the fleshy skinne, this beyng to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thirde coate of the bodye, is the fatte, in Latine Adeps, the which doeth so generally in euery parte of the bodye inuolue and wrappe the same as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman beyng in any reasonable lykyng, it is founde in euery part (except fewe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places needeleſſe here to be reſited, and doth entercurre and run betweene the two foreſayde skinnes, receauyng & embraſyng in it ſelfe the ſmall baſtyng fibres, the vaines, arties, and ſinnues, which (as I ſayd before) be deriued frō the one skin to the other: And the greater foyſon of fat that there is betweene the two skinnes, the leſſe be the vaynes intercurring betweene them, conſpicuous or ſenſible to the eye (thabundance of

The thirde coate, is the fatte.

Store of fat letteth the shewe of the vaynes.

of fat drowning & couering the greatnes of them) the which also in the selfe same place of a leaner or sparer person, shalbe seene very great, and as it were swollen vaynes, in comparison of the fatter. Itẽ, vnderstande ye that in some part of the body, naturally fatnes doth abound much more then in other some, as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two fingers thicke & more: and in women that be meanely fat, in the thyes & buttockes this fatte is of three, yea foure fyngers thycknes, which (as I sayde aboue) alwayes hath his place betweene the foresayde two skynnes.

Fat in some part, more then some.

Nowe immediatlye vnder the fleshy skyn, be contayned the Muskles of the body, so that the inner face or superficie of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth the Muskles, is alwayes bedewed with a certayne slymye moysture, by whiche meanes the foresayde Muskles mouing and styrryng vnder the said fleshy skyn, be the freer, & haue the lesse impediment or let in theyr motion, & verye easie it is

What is contayned nert vnder the fleshye skynne.

to

to separate this skin from the Muskles.

Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap.iii.

What is meant by the name of Muskles.

THe Muskles of mans body be called the mouyng cordes and fleshye strynges, whereby any member of the bodye is mooued to or fro, vpwarde or downeward, or turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, or otherwyse do moue either of your handes, and in closyng or mouyng it with the other hande do feele the wreste of that hande, ye shall sensibly perceaue as it were certayne cordes mouyng vnder the skinne, the whiche be called Muskles, in Latin Musculi. To discusse curiously the nature or occasion of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here it is sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wheresoeuer there is great store of Muskles, and cheefely in the myddle parte of them, there is also greate plentie of flesshe, enterlardyng

The Muſkles entermingled with fleſhe.

lardyng & enterminglyng it ſelfe with the Muſkles, & as it were condyndyng, colligatyng, or knyttyng together the Muſkles, not ſo yet, but that neuertheleſſe they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the bodye lefte apart and vnmentioned of, here wyll I onlye declare a litle of the Muſkles of the belly, forſomuch as theyr operation is ſometymes conferent and appertenyng to the matters that we entend of.

The Muſkles of the belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the bellye, next vnder the fleſhy kell or ſkyn, be.iiii. Muſkles, eche ſituate and ſette vnder other, of the whiche, the vppermoſt immediately touchyng the fleſhy ſkyn, be called the Byaſwyſe deſcendyng Muſkles, in Latin Muſculi obliqui deſcendentes. Of theſe Muſkles there be two, in eche ſyde of the belly one, ſo that theſe two Byaſwyſe deſcendyng Muſkles meete together in the middle region of the bellie, and be extended or ſpread ouer al the amplitude of the belly, ſhapyng thereto as it were another coate.

The

The seconde Muskles be named the byaswyse ascendyng Muskles, in Latin, Musculi obliqui ascendentes, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the firste, in eche syde or coaste of the belly is there one.

The third sort of the belly Muskles, as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in Latin, Musculi recti, which be double as the other two before. The ryght Muskles.

The fourth be nominated the ouerthwart Muskles, in Latin, Musculi transuersi, because they transuerse or ouerthwart the belly. In eche side likewise of whom, ther is one of these Muskles, which in the middle lyne of the belly encountre eche other, as I haue sayde of the aboue named three Muskles, so that the byaswyse ascendyng, and the byaswyse descendyng with the ouerthwart Muskles, do eche of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the bellye, but so do not the ryght Muskles, The ouerthwart Muskles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but small in comparison of the other. All these foure Muskles be to the entrayles and bowels within the belly, as foure seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe of whom, together with the ayde of the midriffe, all expulsion both vpward and downewarde in the guttes, in the stomacke, in the matrix of the woman in the tyme of labour, and also in the bladder in tyme of makyng of water, is wrought, and yet besydes this vtilitie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) defende, fortifie, and strength the inwardes of the bellye.

The vse of the foure belly Muskles.

¶ Of the Kell, called Peritoneum. Capit. iiii.

VNder the laste Muskle of the belly, called the ouerthwarte Muskle, immediatlye succedeth a certaine thin rime, kell, or skin, named in Latin, Peritoneum, whiche compasseth rounde the amplitude and

The Peritoneum and his office.

and largeour of the bellye, takyng his originall at the bynders of the loyne bones, and from thence dilatyng and spreading it selfe abroade, vnderlyneth the ouerthwart Muskles, the mydriffe, & part of the short ribbes. To be short, this rime vnderlineth all the whole cauitie, holonesse, or amplitude of the bellye, from the midriffe to the flankes or share, immediatly contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe all the whole contentes of the belly, euen as the skin next vnder the shell of an egge enuironeth and compasseth immediatly all the contayned meate of an egge. And as for Peritoneum, doth not onlye inuolue all the entrayles of the belly in his compasse, but also yeeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate and webbe of the cloth of his owne bodie, by the which his liuery, they be the more arctly & strayghtly affixed or fastened vnto him selfe, and farther in them selues the stronger within the cauitie of the belly: and vnder this Peritoneum, be contayned these bowels folowyng.

The vse & profit of the Peritoneum.

First

Bowles cõtayned vnder the Peritoneum.

First the stomacke, which is the first receptacle and receauer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the winde pype, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin Omentum, the liuer, the splene or melt, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes the kydnees, the maister vayne, and the maister artire. But here we shal begyn fyrst to entreate of the matrix, as the part which maketh cheefely to our purpose.

¶ The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix. Capit. v.

Dyuers names of the Matrix.

HEre ye shall vnderstande, that these thre wordes, the Matrix, the Mother, and the Wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say, The place wherein the seede of man is conceaued, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the tyme of

of deliueraunce, in Latine, named vterus & Matrix. The necke of this wombe, otherwyse called the womans priuitie, we wyll call the wombe passage, or the priuie passage, in Latin Ceruex vteri, & pudendum muliebre, the extreme end, or ỹ first entraunce of this priuie or wombe passage, ye shall name the passage port, for because that it is the port gate, or entraunce of that passage, or way into the wombe or matrix, in Latin, Vulua, i. vulua.

The wombe passage then or the necke of the wombe, taketh his beginnyng at the passage port, and from thence styeth and mounteth ryght vpwarde vnder the sharebone lyke a great conduct, varying in length & breadth according to the age of the woman. The necke of the Matrix.

To make especiall mention of the length of this wombe passage, were but follie, for the diuersitie thereof. Notwithstandyng in women it is esteemed of the length of. x. xi. xii. or xiii. fingers bredth, some more, some lesse. And this we may say, that nature hath so prou-

ded that it is of sufficient length, to receaue the priuie part of man, in the generation, directing the same towardes the Wombe porte, through the Whiche the sede is naturally sent from the man into the Wombe or mother, thereto helping an attractife power, Whiche is inset and geuen to the Wombe, to attract and drawe towardes it selfe the seede parted from the man (so that there be no other let.)

¶ Of the Wombe and his partes.

Cap. vi.

The Wombe or matrix in women not with chylde contracted.

THy head or vpper ende of this Wombe passage, is situate the Wombe it selfe, Whiche in Woman beyng not With childe is very little, contract and drawen together, so that the amplitude or largenes thereof, passeth not the amplitude and largenes of the priuie passage, the Whiche thyng to some may seeme vncredible, yet by Anothomie ye maye see it to be true.

And

And for all this contraction or drawing so nere together of the matrix, the outsyde of it is very smothe, moyst, glisteryng, and reddishe, as it were a litle redde tempered with a great deale of whyte, the insyde also of the matrix is smothe: yea, and though that the matrix (as we haue said) be full of riuels or wrinckles, by the reason that it is so contract, from a great amplitude or largenes (as may be seene in the wombe or matrix of women with chylde) to this litle compasse, yet maye a body scarce perceaue in this inner side any wrinkle, (albeit that there be infinite) they be so finely and nere drawen together.

The cause of the contraction of the matrix.

This contraction of the matrix, no doubt was made by nature, for these causes, partlye that at suche tyme that the woman is not with chylde, it should occupie the lesse roome in the belly, but cheefely that in tyme of conception of the seede, the litle bolke or quantitie of the sayde seede, at his first conceauyng into the womans mother, may

be touched rounde about euery where of the mother, and as ye Woulde saye, amplexed or embraced, and contayned (as the nut shell contayneth immediatlye the nut) of the inner walles or face of the matrix, and as the seede is viuified, shaped, and doth encrease, so doth the amplitude of the matrix enlarge and waxe bygger, so that at the laste, when the infant commeth to his full groweth, or when the woman is great with chylde, then this coate or kell of the matrix is as thinne as a bladder, where that in tyme of his contraction, or when the woman is not with childe, the coate or wall of the matrix is as good as halfe an inche thicke.

Howe the matrix varieth ỹ thicknes & thinnes of his coate.

Nowe ye shall vnderstande, that the founde or bottome of the matrix is not perfectly rounde bowlwyse, but rather lyke the forme of a mans heart, as it is paynted, sauing that the partition or clifte in the matrix betweene both corners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so profoundlye dented inwardes as the clift

The founde of the Matrix.

clyfte in the hearte: For in the inwarde vault, cauitie, or holoneſſe of the matrix, there is a certayne ſeame, whiche begynnyng in the middle of the forepart of the matrix, at the wombe port, doth paſſe forth by that foreſyde, & ſo by the bottome to the hynder ſyde of the matrix, & from thence along downe to the wombe port on the backſyde, as ye may more euidently ſee in the figure hereof. This ſeame then is as it were a litle ſeparation, marke, or limitie, diuidyng the wombe in two equall partes or ſydes, the ryght and the lefte. Notwithſtandyng, in the matrix there is but one vault, cauitie, holoneſſe, or amplitude, the foreſayde ſeame beyng but as it were a note, ſigne, or ſcace ſenſible marke running along the ſides and botome of the wombe. But this ſeame or line where it paſſeth the bottome of the mother or wombe, is more craſſe, thicke, and fleſhlye, propendyng, heldyng, hangyng or lokyng downeward into the vaulte or amplitude of the

A certayne ſeame deuidyng the matrix as it were in two partes.

In the Matrix but one holoneſſe.

wombe, the whiche line in the sides is nothyng so manifeste ne sensible to be perceaued. Thus ye may see, that the myddle part of the bottome of the Matrix, is not so hye as the two corners or angles on both sydes be. Other distinctions or seperations in the matrix is there none, albeit that in tymes passed, diuers Clarkes haue written, & many other haue beleued, that there shoulde be seuen selles, or seuen distinct places in the matrix, in three of the which on the ryght side, shoulde onlye men chyldren be conceaued, and in the other three on the left syde women chyldren, and yf it chaunced that the seede were conceiued in the seuenth sell, which was the myddelmoste, then that shoulde become a monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman. The which al is but lyes, dreames, and fonde fantasies. For the womans matrix, as I haue sayd, is euen as a strong bladder, hauing in it but one vniuersall holonesse, and the chylde when it lyeth in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more then

Certayne erronious opinions of vii. selles in the wombe.

then on the other, the head beyng to-wardes one of the cozners oz angles, & not vpright toward the middle bzidge.

The matrix hath but one holones

Of the mother pozt. Cap. vi.

THe entraunce of ỹ matrix oz Womb, is named ỹ Womb pozte oz mother pozt, the which in substaunce & fassion, muche doeth resẽble ỹ fourme of an haukes bel, oz other litle mozys bels, sauing that it is much bygger, hauing a clift ouerthwart the body therof, as ye may moze plainly perceiue by ỹ figure hereof. And this pozt of the matrix is of substaunce moze thicke and crasse then the rest of the same, & as it were a kernell rounde & cluft in the middest. This womb-pozt also is fastened & affixed to the vpper ende of the Wombe passage, as all the rest of the Wombe is.

Of the mother pozte, & the situatiõ thereof.

Howbe it, the middle parte of the wombe port or the snowt therof, where it bosseth downeward, doth touche no side nor part of the wombe passage, but onlye heldeth pendande wyse, or loketh downewarde: and where as at suche tyme that the man companyeth with the woman, the priuie passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priuie part, yet notwithstandyng, the mouth of the clift of the wombe port is not moued thereby ne dilated: excepte that it be at suche tyme that the matrix beyng apt and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The womb wel disposed naturally attracteth the seede.

Notwithstandyng, when the seede is conceaued in at this wombe port, it doth not alwayes remayne there, but manye tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it selfe. Albeit yf the seede be retay-

retayned styll in the matrix, then doeth the Wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmely, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat Without violence, and so doth remayne vntyll the tyme of deliueraunce, at What tyme agayne it dilateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is Wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes of the matrix after the seede conceaued.

¶ Of the vessels of seede, called the stones, with other therto appertayning. Cap. viii.

OF eche syde of the matrix lieth a stone, Which both be called the Womans stones, Wherein is engendred the seede & sparme that commeth from the Woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seede of man, but rather Weake, fluy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmitie: howebeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the Whiche it Was ordeyned, as the seede of man for his

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, much fassyoned after the shape of a great and brode almond. The substaunce and bodye of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kernelles sette together, betweene the which is much holonesse, and therin conteyned a certayne thinne watery substaunce. This substaunce of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thinne skinne, very firmely annexed to the forsayde substaunce, which also doth receaue into hym selfe the seede bryngers. We may name the same coate in Latine Supergeminalis.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede bryngers.

THe seede bringers, called in Latin Vasa semē adferentia, be two vaynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one vayne and one artire, and take theyr begyn-

nyng

nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the greate maister vayne, in Latin Caua vena, and the great artire, Arteria magna. The maister vayne hath his originall of the lyuer, from whence it descendeth downewarde along the loynes, vntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of Os sacrum, where the artire (as the worthyer) begynneth to mount vppon the maister vayne, and in this place they both diuide them selues in two partes forkewyse, the ryght part of the forke proceadyng into the ryght thygh & legge, the lefte, into the left legge, the vayne euermore associate with the artire, the which hath his beginning of the heart, from whence he is descended through the mydryffe to this place, distributyng to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The originall of the great vayne

The office of the greate vayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer (which is the blood shoppe, where the blood is

The office of ỹ vaynes

engendred

engendred) to all partes of the bodye blood, therewith to norysshe them. For to the greate vayne where they passe, there commeth innumerable smal vaines on euery syde, euen as to the great ryuers many small streames on euerye syde do resort.

The office of the artires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade abrode in the body the vitall and lyuelye spirite, engendred in the bosome of the hearte, and to refreshe and temper the immoderate heate whiche otherwyse mought be engendred in the bodye, the whiche also sleepe we or wake we, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulce, and loke after what maner the heart (which is the well of these artires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and euen so do they.

The heart and artires haue two contrary motions.

The heart then and the artires thorow him, haue two contrary motions: one is, in closyng it selfe, and the other, in dilatyng and openyng of it selfe, Whiche sorte of mouynges we call the beating

beating of the pulces, When the artires do open them selues, then they attract, drawe, or sucke in fresh ayre, to temper the heate of the body withall, and also spirituall and thinne pure blood. But when they close them selfe, then do they expel mistie fumes, and hoate breathes, or vnnaturall vapours, suche as of necessitie alwayes be engendred in al partes of the bodye, by the whiche blood doth passe, for causes to long here to be alledged, neither is there anye notable vayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the ryght side and forepart of the great vaine proceadeth a braũch, deriued from that place a longe the loynes downwardes to the head of the ryght stone, from the ryght syde lykewyse and foreface of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great vayne downe towardes the ryght loynes, Wher it meeting with the foresayde vayne braunche, before they emplant them selfe in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here straight

Themeting of the vayne and artire.

straight enlarging them selfe, litle and litle stepelwyse, not fully rounde, but flattishe before and behinde, with the broder ende planting & infixing themselfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende, where this vayne braunche and artyre braunche do first meete, they beginne to entermingle, enbrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wyse, wrythyng and diuidyng them selues in thousande of litle braunches, as it were heeres of the head, the one embrasing, compassing, and ouerthwarting the other so confusedly, that no wit can expresse the ryght maner and order of their commixtion. Call this parte then in English, the bradid body, in Latin Varicosū formemplexum, whose nether & broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the ryght stone, sendeth foorth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfold wyse dispersed, spread, and commixt.

The bradyd body.

And

And also into the skin or couer of the stone, called before Supergeminalis, frō the saide bradid body, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the litle small vaynes Whiche ye see reddishe in a mans eye.

And looke What discription and processe We haue made of the ryght syde seede bringers to the ryght stone, euen the same vnderstand of the left side sede bryngers to the left stone, sauyng that the vayne braunche Whiche commeth to the left stone, most commonly taketh his originall of the nether syde of the left kydney vayne, and not immediatly of the great vayne as the other.

Vaynes deriued to the bottome of the matrix.

And ye shall vnderstand agayne, that from the forsaid vayne & artyre of eche side, at the place where theyr fyrst conjunction or meeting is, proceadeth a certayne braunche of the vayne, associate with the artyre, Which both passe forth together to the found or bottome of the mother or matrix, of that syde Where they stande, there delatyng and spreadyng

dyng them selfe abroade in manyfolde smaller braunches, to the nourishment of the body of the matrix.

¶ Of the office and vse of these seede bryngers. Capit. x.

The seede procreate of the vayne blood aud the artiriall blood.

Through these seede bringers, blood out of the vaynes, and liuely spirite out of the artires be deriued, yea, or rather (to speake more properlye) attract or drawen into the stones, there by vertue and naturall instinction of the place altered and chaunged, beyng fyrst confused together the blood and the spirite, by mutuall amplexations or embracementes of these two vesselles, the vayne and the artyre beyng conioyned and vnite in one very body, first beginning in the bradid body, & then after in the whole bodye of the stone: So that thorowe the manyfolde and infinite circulations of the attracted matter by the conduictes or vaynes infinitelye intricate and

and wrythed with a thousande reuolutions or turagaynes (and all in the little compasse of the bodye of the stones) the blood and spirite commixed together, getteth another nature and propertie both in colour and effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that moste commonly alwayes when that nature is disposed to make a transmutation of any matter, that can she not do, vnlesse she haue a mine, shoppe, or workehouse, wherein by continuall circulatiō of the matter transmutable, she may bryng her purpose to passe: Euen as mettalles and other minerals of the earth, haue theyr secrete and vnuisible vaynes, in whiche by daylye and long coagitation, mouyng, circulation, and hurling together, they be brought from one fourme to another, & made metals of that the which before was none.

Note the engin and policie of nature.

Of these sort of mines, there be foure principall in the body of man. The first is the mine of blood, which is the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,

Foure mines in mans body.

before of colour whyte, is transmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nourysshe all partes of the bodye, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thorowe verye small and infinite litle vaynes into the lyuer.

The heart is the second mine.

The seconde mine is the heart, which of the blood attract and drawen from the great maister vayne, proceeding out of the forsayde lyuer, into his pariers, doth engender vehement and liuely spirite, cõmixed with depured and greatly elebozated blood, within the selles of the heart, from thence sent foorth thorowe the artyres, into all partes of the body, beyng in colour yealowishe, thyn and hotte blood.

The brayne the thirde mine.

The thyrde myne is the brayne, of whom all the sinewes take theyr originall. In whom the wittie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of al sensibilitie be engendred, and thorow the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all suche partes as moue and feele, haue that by reason of sinewes de-

riued

rined vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones in Whō by cōmixtion of all the other three forē said metalles of the body, that is to say, vayne blood, arteriall blood, and lyuely spirites engendred in the head, is engendred & produced seede, Whiche bestowed in his due place, becommeth lyke a perfection to the creature from Whence it came, that is to say, of mankinde, man. The fourth mine is the stones.

But ye shall vnderstande, that the receauyng of the seede into the stones, is not that there shoulde be any one onlye caue, holowneſſe, sell, vaulte, or parler in the bodye of the stone, Wherein it myght be receaued and retayned, lyke as the holowneſſe of an egge, the meate beyng out of it, or of an hasell nutte, the kernell out of it, but farre otherwyse: for the stones (chefely in man more then in woman) be massife, not hard, but delicate and softe, as a softe kirnell, full of small & almost vnsensible White vaines, reuoluing them selfe in and out a thousand folde, and manyfold Wise intricate Howe the seede is receaued into the stones.

together, within the which the seede is conueyed, caryed, concocted, or digested and altred, by vertue of the white flesh, whiche intercurreth and intermingleth it self euery where betweene the foresaid vayne, lyke as the earth doth intercurre and intermingle it selfe betweene and among the small fibres, beardes, or heares of rootes: the whyte coate also or walles of the said vaynes, helping not a lytle to the transmutation of the colour from red to whyte.

How the colour of the seede is transmuted.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receaueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by whiche it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very small and narowe, and long withall, then the liquour that passeth through it, receaueth and sauoureth so muche the more the nature and condition of that vessel or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduit or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cauitie of the same, but so much that

Liquid thinges sauoureth of the nature of the vessels thorowe whiche it runneth.

that an heere myght passe through it: then say I, that a gallō or quart of water passing and thrillyng through that narowe conduite shoulde sauour much more of the nature and qualitie of lead, then though the holowneſſe of the aforesayde conduite, beyng styll of the abouenamed length, were so large that a bowle might enter and passe thorowe the same. For this reason, that when the water hath to passe thorowe so narow passage, it maketh the longer iourney, and yeeldeth the smaller threade or streen, and therfore is touched more immediatly and intyrely of the insydes or inner walles of the conduite. And further, well ye wote that a lytle quantitie is sooner ouercome & altered, then a great. As a spooneful of wine standyng all nyght in a pewter or brasen pot, shall sauour muche more of the potte, then a pynte of the same. Lykewyse, yf a man woulde coole hoate drynke by pouring of it out of one pot or cup into another, sooner and more perfectly shall the circum-

A litle quantitie sooner ouercome then a greater.

cumstant colde ayre alter and coole it, beyng poured out very softly, makyng therof a fine and small streen, then yf he dyd the same hastyly. And truely this engine and pollicie doth nature vse in euery part where she causeth any notable transmutation, makyng the matter transmutable to passe through longe strayghtes & narrow turagayne lanes, the matter bowyng, enclinyng, and apting it selfe allwayes to the disposition and nature of the vesselles throwe which it cooleth or runneth, so that the sparme or sede of man or woman, being attracted by the forsaid seede bryngers into the stones, passeth by many narow strayghtes, which beyng before bayne blood and artire blood, by vertue of the places through whiche it had to passe, becommeth from red colour to whyte, & of much more perfection then it was before. For this transmutation of blood into sparme, is not only in colours, but also in properties and absolute perfection. What greater wonder or miracle is there,

The policie of nature.

The transmutation of blood into sparme.

there, wherein we may knowledge and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to conſyder howe that of the meate and drynke whiche we dayly do eate, by digeſtiõ firſt of the ſtomacke, the fine iuice therof is ſeparated from the droſſe and groſſer part: & then after at the ſeconde hande, the foreſayde iuice paſſyng thorow the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thorowe infinite ſmal vaynes, there tranſmuted into blood, from the lyuer ſent into the great maiſter vayne, from the which the heart drawyng part, tranſmuteth certayne thereof into Artire blood. Agayne, the ſtones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the artire blood, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, ſparme: whiche ſparme beſtowed and conceaued where it ſhoulde be, becommeth mankynde.

Howe meat and drinke is tranſmutated into blood.

This foreſaide ſeede, as we ſaide before, is nothing ſo firme, perfect, abſolute and mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not call this any imperfectiõ or lack in womã: for the womã in her

The ſeede in woman, not ſo firme as in man.

kinde, and for the office & purpose wherfore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neyther is woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtier and strong, the woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the Horse, the Lion, the Oliphant, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, comparyng one man to another, suche as be gelded and want the genitores, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, thē other: in voyce woman lyke, in gesture and condition nice, in softnes of skyn and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength and force impotent, nothing manly ne bold, the whiche imbecilitie in them, maye wel be named imperfection. For imperfection is, whē that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie whiche commonly by

Who be vnperfecter the one then the other.

nature

nature is in all other, or the more part of that kynde, comparyng it to other of the same kinde, & not of another kynde.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Nowe shall I declare what becommeth of the seede being thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

¶ Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the angles and corners of the Patrir. Cap. xi.

AT the lower end & foote or base of the braded body, wher it is infixed & planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone there is the begynnyng of another vessel, which may be called the seede caryer, in Latine Vas semen deferens, whose body is whyte and hardishe, like an harde sinewe. And from that part where it taketh his begynnyng, it pas- Of the seede caryers.

seth

seth downewardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more expressye perceaue in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne restying or remountyng vpwarde, creepyng along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the myddle region of the stone on that side, al the way as it creepeth, firmely fastned and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasten them selues to the walles, by whiche they creepe.

The bellye and innerside of the forsaide seede carier, wherby it cleaueth to the outside or face of the stone, beyng flattyshe, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe. From the begynnyng & head of this vessell, to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yeele when thei slide fast or hastylye, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or

wreathes

wreathes nere ioyned together: howbe it, these wreathes be not so frequent and thicke in the woman as in the man. Therefore this part of the seede caryers may be called the worme, in Latin. Corpus lumbricosū, for because that it hath many conuolutions, as wormes lying together haue. Of the part called the worme.

And yf ye be disposed to separate this forenamed worme from the face of the stone with a sharpe knyfe, ye shall perceaue no maner of holonesse or cauitie of bayne or other cōduite: but as it were a ruggednesse, by reason of separation from the partie to whom it was before so surely annexed. And yet no doubt, there is veryly in it cauitie and holownesse, by and thorowe the whiche seede is caried into the angles of the Matrix. Nowe then when this foresayde wormye body hath attayned to the myddle region (as it were) of the stone, it begynneth to depart from the bodye of the stone, and is no more (as it was before)

thicke

thicke wreathed, but playne, smothe, & rounde lyke a rounde sinewe, with an vnsensible holonesse, departyng frō the stone along the insyde of the belly, ouerthwartyng the guttes, to the angle or corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it procede from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not straycht or forthryght, but somewhat bowyng & crookyng it selfe in two or three crookes by the way. These seede caryers receaueth the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones and forsayd seede bryngers, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they whiche do open dead women, shall alwayes perceaue in the holownes of the Matrix, these two angles or corners spetially bedeawed or imbrued with a whyte slymye and thynne cleare matter, whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in women hauyng greate

and

& feruent desire to any man, this seede doth issue from this forsayde place, downe along to the womans priuie passage, moistring all that part, as it were with a deawe. Aristotle and other mo, do suppose that this seede in woman, serueth for no other purpose, but onlye to recite, moue, and stirre the woman to pleasure. But some paraduenture would thinke that this were but a simple & anydle or slender purpose, whiche if they did more nerely consider the matter, should perceaue it to be a iust, great, and necessary cause. For if that the god of nature had not instincted, and inset in the body of man and woman, such a vehement and ardent appetite and lust, the one lawfully to companye with the other, neyther man ne woman woulde neuer haue ben so attentife to the workes of generation and encreasement of posteritie, to the vtter decaye in shorte tyme of al mankynde. For ye shal heare some women in tyme of theyr trauayle, moued through great payne and intol-

The prickes of nature.

lerable

lerable anguisshe, forswearе and vowe themselfe, neuer to companye with a man agayne, yet after that the panges be passed, within shorte whyle, for entyre loue to theyr husbandes, and singular naturall delyte betweene man and woman, they forget both the sorowe passed, and that that is to come. Suche be the priuie workes of God, and suche be the prickes of nature, which neuer createth no speciall pleasure vnaccompanyed with some sorowe, neyther is there for the moste part any sorowe, but that it hath annexed some ioy or comfort, lesse or more, to alleuiate and lyghten the burthen and weyght of displeasure.

No ioy without some sorowe.

¶ Here is declared the situation of the bladder in women.
Cap. xii.

NOwe for the vicinite and neighbourhood that is betweene the priuie passage and the bladder, here I will declare a lytle the nature of the bladder.

The

The bladder in woman is assituate and set vppon the forepart of the Mother, whose necke is annexed, fastened, & vnite within the priuie passage, vppon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very harde to separate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the which necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ryng, forming and claspyng the vrine passage in such wise, that no vrine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it therto: which thyng cõmeth to passe, other when the bladder is ouercharged with vrine, or els that the vrine, although that it be but lytle in quantitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, whyche for the sharpenesse and eagernesse of the qualitie pryckyng and tycklyng the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes for lytle quantitie. &c.

The Muscle of the bladder.

Howe the bladder Muskle is forced to open it selfe

The

The description of the bladder.

The body of the bladder is rounde, into the which a lytle aboue the necke therof, entreth the seconde brine conduites, deriued from eche kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great master vayne, and lykewyse of the Artyre, is situate a kidney, in Latin called Ren. And to euery of them from the sayde great vayne and great Artyre, is there deriued a braunche of the vayne, and another of the Artyre, by the which braunches the kydneys do attract and drawe blood vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr natiue office) separate and diuide from the watery part, sendyng forth the water, otherwyse called brine, downe to the bladder, through the brine vaynes, or conduites.

Of the stone engendred in the backe

In these kidneys is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, eyther of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or peeces

peeces therof, descende from the raynes or kidnees into the bladder, by the forenamed vrine conduites, and so from the bladder out at the yarde, where, yf the peeces be rockie or bigge, it causeth to the partie in the voydyng of them, vntollerable paynes and torment. And note that for the moste part, the ryght kydney euermore standeth hyer then the lefte.

The vryne once entred into ỹ bladder, can not reuert.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande that when the vryne, pisse, or water is once entred through the foresayde vrine conduites, into the bladder, it can not returne vpwarde agayne the way that it came (were the bladder neuer so ful) for be cause that where as the said vrine conduites do enter into the bladder, in the inner face of ỹ bladder, there be set before the mouth or gull of the conduites, certayne litle skinnie flappes, which suffer any thing to enter in, but when it is once entred, these skinnie flappes close the passage, and defende, that no thyng can rebounde, ne reflue backe a-

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bellowes, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellowes great store of wynde or ayre at once, but when the bellowes is full of wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somewhat, there wyll none thereof returne agayne out by that waye, the flappes of leather crossing and defendyng the passage: yea, the more vehementlye and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellowes together, the faster and more stifly doth the flaps stop the waye, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellowes, the violence and force of the wynde closing and stopping his owne way, so that the bellowes would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sauing that the sayde skinnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftily, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then anye notable quantitie or qualitie of the vryne, gathered

thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muskle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it foorth, passyng thorowe the priuie passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also as in the raynes, is there in manye people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, dissury, with other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is verye harde or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured without insition and cutting out. But Women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstandyng, dyuers of them be herewith greeuously encombred. The stone engendred in the bladder.

¶ Of the vaynes Which resort to the matrix and the partes thereof. Item of the termes & their course with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii.

Inasmuch as the absolute vnderstandyng of the nature of the termes in Women, can not wel be perceiued, except firstit be knowē What vaines, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the matrix: therfore first I will entreate of them, & then cōsequently of the termes.

Three notable vaynes resorting to the matrix.

Vaynes then notable, which may be perceaued by Anothomie to reach from seuerall partes of the great Vena caua, or maister vayne, to the matrix and the partes therof, be three, to whom for the more cleare, distinct, and euident doctrine sake, I wil geue three distinct and diuers names. The first shalbe named the bottome vaines of the matrix. The second, the necke vaynes of the matrix. The thyrde, the share vaynes.

The bottome vaines of the matrix.

The bottome vaynes be they, which proceade and take their begynnyng at the seede bringer vaynes, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the matrix, there dilating themselfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small slippes, norysshyng the bodye of the matrix, as hath ben sayde alredye in the ende of the .ix. Chapter.

As touchyng the necke vaynes of the matrix, ye shall vnderstande that in the foresaid .ix. chapter, I shewed you how that the great maister vayne, and the great artire associate together, when they attayne about Os sacrum, they begin to diuide them selues in two partes forkwyse, of the whiche the ryght (& so likewyse the left) part of the forke is rediuided in other two partes forkwyse also, wherof the vppermoste and greatest vayne passeth downe along tyll it come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it proceedeth into the vtter parte of the thygh, & so along downe to the legges and feete. The innermost and lefte or smaller part or vayne of this seconde diuision, where it parteth from the vppermoste, passeth downe along vntyll it come to the great hole whiche is alwayes in ỹ share bone, through whiche

The necke vaynes.

it entereth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the sayd hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal braunches in the necke of the matrix, and the nether parte of the body of the matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more clerely see in ỹ figure hereof.

Of the neck vaynes of the matrix.

The share vaynes take their begynnyng at the insyde of the aboue named vppermost and greatest vayne, euen at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer ỹ hockle bone, frō whence this slip is deriued on eche side, that is, both the ryght and the lefte, vnto the middle of the sharebone, where in men it sendeth forth braunches into the skinne that couereth the priuie parte and the coddes, & also the Perineum, whiche is the place that is betweene the fundement and the yard. In women this vaine where it attayneth the middle parte of the sharebone, it deriueth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes, sydes, or extreme ende of the priuie passage, and also in the

The share vaynes.

the sayde perineum. And this shall suffise for the declaration of the vaynes whiche resort to the matrix and her partes, saue that ye muste vnderstande, that loke what order or procession of vaynes commeth to the matrix from the ryght syde, the same selfe order is lykewyse in the lefte syde: and agayne, that none of these vaynes runne to the matrix or otherwhere, vnassociate of an artire.

Nowe to come to the declaration of the nature of termes: ye shal vnderstād that they be called in Latin Menstrua, so, because that once in a moneth they happen alwayes to womankinde after .xiiii. or .xv. yeres of age passed (beyng in their perfect health) In Englishe they be named Termes, because they retourne eftsones at certayne seasons, tymes, and termes, and some name them their flowers. What name soeuer ye geue vnto it, ye shall wite, that the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng els but the issuyng of certayne blood,

What is meant by this worde Termes.

comprehended in the vaynes of the matrix, there by litle and litle collected and gathered betweene terme & terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente foorth.

The which blood, the matrix vaines do attract from the great vena caua, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with muche leasure, yea, so muche as there is space betweene the one hauing of the flowres & the other (whiche is commonly three wekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde vaynes in filling, and yf they were soner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth againe. For when they be once replenished, they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe any more, tyl they be lyghtened and discharged of that that is drawen alredy.

Wherfore at the foresayde certayne circuites and termes, the small endes of these matrix vaynes open them selues

in

in the inner face or superficie of the matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this blood, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in women, is this: Forasmuche as almyghtie God had so institute that women shoulde be conceaued, efformed, or fassyoned, augmented, nourysshed, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or matrix to be the sayde receptacle, & house of office wherin she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceaued. The cause of the ordinaunce of tearmes.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue foode and nourysshment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath prouided

uided, that there shoulde alwayes be prest and redye a continuall course and resort of blood in the vaines of the matrix, as a very naturall course, spryng, fountayne, or Wel, euermore redy to arrouse, Water, and norishe the feature, so sone as it shalbe cõceiued, yea although the Woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not with man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no fault in nature, who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a redynesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeyned for this necessary purpose, yet Whē the purpose fayleth (as it doth When there is no feature in the Wombe to be fedde therewith) it should be to the place but a burthen and vnprofitable loade, there to remayne or lynger: Wherfore then I say, at her set and prescript tyme she laboureth to cleare her self of it, and to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vse. The which thing When she hath so done, yet vnto the sayde vaynes of this con-

continuall spring, resorteth of newe a-
gayne other freshe blood in the place of
that that is departed, Whiche by litle
and litle coling into them, in the wont
circuite of time refilleth them, and then
yet issueth agayne, and so this continu-
al course doth kepe alwaies in women,
from their youth, tyll they come to a
bout fiftie yeres of age, or litle more or
lesse, at what time naturally this spring
dryeth away, which when it is gone, it
is impossible for the woman to beare a-
ny mo children. For were the womā ne-
uer so yong & lusty, yet yf she neuer had
her termes (as some suche there be) she
shal neuer also haue no childrē, albeit it
may be that she may conceaue, but the
seede conceaued can not proue, but mel-
teth & issueth foorth agayne for lacke of
nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where
as some write & saye that the womens
termes folowe the course of the moone,
so that in the full or in the wane of the
moone they shuld alwaies come: this is
not true, for they haue them at one time

They that haue no termes can not beare chyldren.

and

Tearmes come not to all women lyke.

and other in all seasons of the moone. Againe, as they come not to all Women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of their duraunce not all one in euerye Woman, for in some they lynger vpon them. v. vi. vii. yea. viii. dayes at ech terme, to their great effeoblishment & strong paines in the backe. In some other cõmonly they passe not the space of three dayes at the vttermost, Wherefore such sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, all Women (for the most part) Which be of very delicate & moyst complexions (as the sanguyne cheefely be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme doth it endure vppon them. And contrary, such as be dry and collerike, other by nature, or labour and trauaile, & suche that be of complexion cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme do they endure vpon them. After what maner the feature conceaued is fedde and nourished with this bloode (matter at other times of ỹ termes) I

Wyll

wyll declare, when that I haue some-what firste shewed the nature of cer-tayne caules, wherein the feature con-ceaued is wrapped and muolued.

Of the three caules or Wrappers wher-in the infant is lapped. Capi.xiiii.

THe seede conceaued into ỹ Wombe or matrix of the mother, anon it is amplected, clip-ped, & embraced of the inner face of ỹ matrix, ỹ mouth or port thereof in the meane while closed & shut exquisite-lye. The seede then when it hath ben a certayne litle space in the Wombe, by the naturall heate, or rather by the in-set and ingenite vertue of that place, is enuironed & enclosed rounde with three diuers coates, caules, or, Wrappers, which in Latin they call (Inuolucra.)

The feature conceaued is wrapped in three caules.

The first and moste immediate or neareſt

The first caule

neareſt to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleare caule or ſkinne, whiche contayneth rounde about the whole feature, and yet is faſtened to no part of the feature, but onlye at the nauell, by certayne vaynes and artires, whereof we wyll ſpeake anone, this caule in Greke is called Amnios, in Latin Agniua, for cauſe it is as delicate as lambes be. The Midwifes commonly call it the coyfe or biggen of the chylde, and ſome call it the chyldes ſhert, the which alſo manye tymes proceedeth alone with the chylde, eyther vpon the childes head, or one of ỹ armes or legges. And then the women reſerue it as a thyng that ſhoulde betoken ſome great lucke to the chylde in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chylde hath not ſuche a coyfe, becauſe it doth appeare but ſeldome alone, vnaccompanyed with the other caules. Betwene this wrapper or coyfe, and the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowiſh ſweat which euaporeth continually from the

ſkyn

skinne of the infant, whyleſt it is in the wombe.

The ſecond wrapper or caule in Greke is called Allantoides, in latin Farciminoſa, in Engliſhe, theſe two termes do ſignifie (haggiſwyſe) for becauſe that it is faſhioned much after the ſhape of the outwarde skinne or bagge of an haggiſſe pudding. The inner face and ſuperficie of this caule is ſmoth and moyſte, faſtened to no part of the firſt wrapper, but onlye at the nauell of the chylde, and contayneth alſo rounde about in his compaſſe and cauitie or holownes, the whole chylde, and the ſaide firſt caule. The ſecond wrapper.

Betweene this and the firſt caule, is gathered together all the ſtore of vryne that the chylde maketh, duryng the time it is in the mothers wombe, wherin the induſtry of nature is to be lauded, which ſo prouideth, that this piſſe or vryne of the infant ſhould be expelled betwene theſe two caules, and not remayne about the body therof, leſt with the acrimonye and eager ſharpeneſſe Where the vryne of the childe becommeth.

hereof, it should endamage and greeue the tender body of the baby.

The thirde Wrapper named Chorion.

The thirde Wrapper of the feature is named Chorion of the Grekes, in Latin, secunde or secundina, in English ye may call it the secundine: Albeit that in the second booke folowyng, I do commonlye vse to name ꝑ whole afterbyrth, the secundine. And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name of (secunde or secundina) to this Wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (secunde) or (secundina) is proper & most due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothing els but an issuyng forth, and proceeding of these three Wrappers or caules, together with such grosse excrementes as haue ben engendred and remayning in the wombe, duryng the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the chylde is first proceeded & come to lyght, for first issueth the infante, and then secondlye, the foresaid afterbirth, & therfore it may be iustlye called the second birth or secundine.

This

This Wrapper or caule then, doth not vniuersally, and in euery part compasse and couer the infant as the other two Wrappers do, but onlye the myddle region, as it were from the vpper part of the waste, to the share of the infant, so that it is compassed with this Wrapper as with a broade hoope ryngе, the latitude or breadth whereof, is commonly to be esteemed about the breadth of .vi. or .viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe round about the body therof, as it were a broade gyrth or swadlyng bande, but yet ye must not vnderstand that it shuld touche immediatlye the body of the infant, for betweene this and the bodye thereof (as I haue declared before) be the foresaid two other caules or Wrappers, which generally incloseth rounde the whole corpes of the infant, wher as this hoope caule compasseth and coue-reth but the middle region therof only.

The office and propertie of this Wrapper is suche: Fyrst the vtter face of it cleaueth and is affixed or basted verye The office of the hoope caule.

exactly to the inner face and walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnnumerable small vaynes and artyres, which at this tyme do shewe them selues more clearely in the face of the Matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euery parte thereof, touchyng the same Matrix, so that the saide hoope caule and the inner syde of the Matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediate meanes of the sayde vaynes and braunches, euen much lyke as the body of the Juy tree basteth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the walles or trees, whereby it creepeth by many hearie fibres or small threedes.

This coniũction betweene the Matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so broade, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe rounde about in the Matrix. And these foresayd vaynes and artires do not only knyt and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substaunce of the hoope caule at euerye part

part thereof. And within the sayd substaunce of the hoope caule, these manyfold smal braunches meete, & entermingle the one with the other, the vaynes with the vaynes, and the Artires with the Artires, so that in theyr recountre and meetyng, they produce alwayes bigger and bigger vaynes and Artires, (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great vaynes, and two great artires, the whiche foure vessels from hence proceede together, passe & pearse through the other two caules spoken of before, and so entreth into the Nauill of the child, so that the three caules by the meanes hereof be attached, nayled, and fastened to the childes nauil, and when they be entred into the Nauil, the two vaynes degenerate in one, the whiche frō this place mounteth vpward along the inner superficie of the belly, vntyll it haue attayned into the liuer, wher it entering, diuideth it self againe into many slippes, so that no doubt the blood is caried through this nauill vayne, from the

vaynes of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the chylde, from whence againe it is attracted into al partes nozyshable of the Jnfant.

Agayne, the two Artyzes passe from the Nauell downewarde, the one along the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder, the other along the left, tyll it attayne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Through these Artyzes, lyuely spirite and freshe ayze is deriued out of the mother, into the chylde, wherewith the naturall heate of the chylde is viuified and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the forezsayde nauyll vaine, when the chylde is bozne, begin to wyther and dzye, euerye day mozе and mozе, & become much like a Harpestring, without any holownesse oz cauitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessell, which taketh his oziginall at the bottome, founde, oz vpper part of the chyldes bladder, and extendeth it selfe to the nauyll of the Jnfant, throughwhich it passeth vntyll it come betweene

betweene the fyrst and the seconde caule Without the chyldes bydy, Where, by a priuie issue deuised by nature for the same purpose, is expelled the brine of the Infant, proceedyng by this brine vayne from the bladder, as partly was spoken of before, that part of this brine vaine which is within the body, when the chylde is borne dryeth and withereth away, as I sayde of the other. By which way the chylde doth expell the brine.

The inner superficie or face of this Chorion is very strongly affired and fastned to the vtter superficie of the seconde caule named Allantoides.

As for the bastyng that is betweene the Matrix and Chorion, many tymes it is weakened and effeoblished by reason of euyll, flegmaticke, or colericke humours therabout, betweene the bastinges conceaued, whiche ouermuche habounding, do cloy the said bastyng vaines or strynges, whereby manye tymes the one seuereth from the other before conuenient season, & so causeth abortement. The mouthes or specks of the vaines in

the matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Chorió, be called in latin Acetabula & Cotiledones, for what cause, or vpon what reasō, is both nedeleſſe and vnprofitable here to be rehearſed. Agayne, the ſubſtaunce of this Chorion is not thinne like a ſkin, bladder, or caule: but of al other partes of the bodye, it may be moſt worthyly reſembled to the ſpleane or melt in a man or beaſt, the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is as much or more as the thicknes of the thumbe, the colour ſwartiſhe black. Of which colour alſo the blood therein conteyned, is as the remayne and refuſe of the purer, attract and drawen naturallye of the Infant, by the abouenamed nauil vayne. So that, to be ſhort, Chorion is the immediat receptacle and receauer of al the vaynes and artires, to be deduced from the Matrix to the chylde, and the chylde receaueth only at his hande the two vaynes and Artires, Whiche by the way as they paſſe & pearſe thorow the other two calles, towardes the chyldes Nauyll, they ſende into eche of the

The ſubſtaunce of Chorion.

the caules innumerable small eye bay-
nes and artyres, Whereby the caules be
susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to sturre thēselues in the Matrix baynes, and at certayne circui-
tes to issue foorth: Nowe when there is a feature or chylde in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceede no more foorth (as superfluous) but remayne and be re-
serued to the necessarie nutriment of the feature, and some part therof reflueth & is reuerted to the womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and cre-
ated this course of blood, as hath ben written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceaued and abused, which call the Termes the womans purgation, or the cleansyng of theyr blood: as who should say that it were the refuse, drosse and byler part of the other blood re-
maynyng in the body, naturallye euery

moneth sequestrate and separated from the purer, for the vilitie and euyll qualitie therin comprehended. For vndoubtedly this blood is euen as pure and holsome as all the rest of the blood in anye part of the body els.

The termes be of so holsome blood, as any other part in the body.

Is it to be thought, that nature would feede the tender & delicate Infant in the mothers wombe, with the refuse of the blood, or not rather with the purest of it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she woulde that the pure blood commyng frō the Matrix vaynes shoulde be made yet purer, she suffereth not the same to enter immediatly into the Infant, but first vseth another meane, and sendeth it into Chorion or the hoope cal (as I haue sayd before) Where truely it hath a certayne circulation and another digestion, Wherby it is defecate, and clensed very exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature attenuated and fined, and so at the laste sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all the grosser part in the spungy bodye of the hoope caule.

The chylde being in the wombe, norysshed of the purest blood

Yet

Yet much more are to be detested and abhorred the shamefull lyes and slaunder that Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis mulierum, & diuers other mo haue wrytten, of the venemous and daungerous infectiue nature of the womans flowres or termes, the whiche all be but dreames and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr fond wordes here, were but losse of inke & paper, wherefore let them passe with theyr authors. Slaunders of the Termes.

Which of the three Matrix vaynes conteyne the Termes, and howe the Pylke commeth to the womans brestes.
Cap.xv.

I Shewed you here before, that to thre different partes & regiõs of the Matrix, there resorted from thre different partes of vena caua, thre sundrie vayne slips. Nowe whiche of these slyppes shoulde bryng the blood

blood called the Termes into the Matrix, or from which of them the termes shoulde proceede, it is harde clearely to discusse, but onlye by lykely coniectures. And yet it is a thyng very necessarye to be knowen, for the redyer aduertisement howe medicines for that purpose shoulde be applyed in that place, when neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the Termes by some casualtie stopped, or els contrary to restrayne them immoderately flowyng. For yf the bottome vaynes of the Matrix do contayne only the Termes, then should any medicine conueyed vnderneath profite nothyng, except it be conueyed so farre vp, that it maye attayne within the holowneſſe of the Matrix, the whiche is verye lytle when the woman is not with chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke vaynes of the Matrix do only conteyne theſe termes, then needed medicines to be applyed no farther then to that place. As for the thirde Matrix vaynes, there is none

that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to proceede from them: But manye there be, which do suppose the termes to issue both at the necke baines, and at the bottome baynes also, but most notably at the necke baynes, for because (say they) that these baynes do appeare more conspicuous and notable to the eyes when a woman is cut open, then do the bottome baines, which may be very skantly perceaued, wherfore they thinke that these necke baynes shoulde be the greater stirrer of Termes.

Agayne (say they) we see many tymes that after the woman is conceaued, yet doth there issue termes tyll the thirde or fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth moneth, the which nowe at this tyme can not proceede out of the Matrix: for the port or mouth therof, accordyng to authours opinions, is so closed after the seede conceaued, that the poynt of a needle can not enter but by violence and force. Wherefore they conclude, that the Termes at this tyme muste needes

spryng out of the necke vayne, and not out of the bottome vaynes.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onlye out of the bottome vaines, & out of such of the necke vaines as spreade them selfe onlye within the Matrix, as may be seene in the figure. For inſomuche as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onlye to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose ſhoulde the Termes in the necke vaynes of the Matrix serue, where there can neuer be any conception, neither the seede there can remayne: And as concernyng the issuyng of the Termes after conception, I say that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as blood is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a needle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betweene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes, the

the poynt of a needle will not easily enter, yet water or any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and euen so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shal not folowe that the seede shoulde passe out thereat, aswell as the blood, for the seede is of a more fast compacte, and stedfaste substaunce. And beside this, by that tyme that the seede hath ben but a daye or two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the naturall heate of the place, yea, and is compassed with a thinne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, Wherefore it wyll not so soone issue out of the Matrix without great iniurie.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Physitions do counsell Women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, or Waterishnes of the Matrix (wherby the attractiue and attentiue power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes and vapours vnderneth, or other medi-

medicines at the mouth to drye the sayd humidities, immediatly after the Termes be passed, and not vppon the commyng of them, for yf the woman should be conceaued vpon the commyng of the sayde Termes, then woulde they commixt them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, whereby the seede shoulde become thinner and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the Termes.

But immediatly after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceaued, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the Matrix vaines be yet open, after the lettyng forth of the Termes, they shalbe the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne thē selues with the feature, by meanes of calues wherein the feature is inuolued, and cheefely of Chorion, named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayd

sayde here before.

Yet when the seede hath ben three or foure weekes in the wombe, it is not of sufficient quantitie to consume into his nutriment all the blood that was wont to resort into the Matrix vaynes, wherfore the first, second, yea, & third moneth sometimes at the womans wont tyme of Termes, there issueth and sheweth some blood more or lesse, the more in thē whiche were wont at other tymes to haue aboundaunce of them. &c. And ye shall note that when the child is conceaued, & that the caule Chorion is fastened & basted to the matrix by the vaines therof, yet do not al the vaines of the matrix attaine to the said Chorion, but a certaine, so far as Chorion doth reach, howbeit the larger that Chorió groweth with ỹ child, the mo vaynes doth he couer, wherfore frō those vaynes that be not yet affixed vnto Chorion, do the termes flowe at this time: But whē the child beginneth once to come to a greater perfectiō & growth, then is all the Terme blood reserued

in

in the Matrix, as litle enough to satisfie the chylde, and then also part thereof mounteth vp into the brestes, and becōmeth mylke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

Yet agayne to confirme myne opinion, that the Termes do only issue out of the vaute of the Matrix: Ye shall vnderstande, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers Women in cure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the streete, beyng both neare the time of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatlye herevppon, theyr Termes dyd issue. And so continued dayly, to the one of them, the space of halfe a yere, & to the other a Whole yere, so that after that time the Termes stayed agayne, and issued no more dayly as before, but once in foure Wekes, at What time they voyded great lumpes, kakes, or cloddes of blood, congealed together euen

euen lyke the liuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betweene eche voydyng of these lumpes of blood, (whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure wekes) euery day continually appeared and issued there whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare the particuler occasions of this maner of voydyng of the termes, ye shal vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix vaynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of blood, and that nearer their tyme of purgation, vppon whiche bracke, the blood dayly issued afterward, whereby the vigour & kind heate of the Matrix, by litle and litle decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnesse succeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the Matrix, wexed the more contract and narower, for colde closeth, knitteth, & congeleth. Hereto helped also not a litle the great vse of colde byndyng medicines, whiche eche of them dyd apply to

this place at the simple counsayle of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the blood wont alwayes dayly to procede, remayneth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the vaynes, it congeleth and cluddereth together, lyke as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessell, and that the blood stande still in it the space of .v. or .vi. houres, it wylbe concret and congiled in a cludder lyke a lyuer, the watery part thereof swimming and flitting aboue vppon the face of it: and euen so is it of the blood congiled in the Matrix, so that when there is so muche of this congiled blood conceaued together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any lenger, then violently and perforce it issueth out together, with farre greater peril, daunger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a childe.

The whyte flowres that issued, during

ring the tyme that this blood gathered in the matrix, was (no doubt) the verye waterisshe part that fleeted when the blood congiled, for that water can neuer congile as the blood doth, wherfore euerye day as faſt as the blood dyd congyle in the matrix, ſo faſte alſo dyd the water ſeperate it ſelfe from the blood, and ſo iſſued.

Notwithſtanding I am not ignorant that the very whyte flowres in dede do procede from the ſeede cariars, into the angles or corners of the matrix, and ſo frō thence outwarde, the which diſeaſe alſo men haue manye tymes. And it commeth eyther of the aboundaunce of fleugme in the body, or of the corruptiō and euyll qualitie mixed in the ſeede. &c.

Theſe examples as I ſuppoſe may be ſufficient euidences, that the Termes ſpring alwayes frō within the matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item I haue ſene diuers other Womē, in whom their termes haue ſtaied the ſpace of. vi. viii. &. x. Wekes, wherewith

their bellies haue encreased and wexed bigger, so that they haue thought thē-selues to be with chylde: Notwithstandyng, at the last haue voyded suche lyke lumpes of blood, as I haue spoken of here before, not without greate peryll and daunger to them in the voydyng, wherewithall their bellies haue relanked and decreased agayne. And thus I make an ende, to talke anye more of the nature and course of the Termes: and now wyll I declare somwhat of ỹ conueyaunce & course of the milke into the womans brestes: for there is great affinitie, communitie, and familiaritie betweene the Matrix & the brestes, whiche naturally do perceaue and feele anone when the matrix hath conceiued, and then begyn they to brue & to make ready their part, agaynst the tyme that the Matrix hath aldone her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to the most mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe whiche way the sayde Terme shoulde attayne from the matrix to the breastes, ye shall vnderstand, that the vppermost and greatest vayne of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the xiii. chap. Where it attaineth the hockle bone, redye to passe out of the holonesse of the belly into the thigh, before that it perse the kell called peritonium, it sendeth foorth a notable vaine braunche, which from hence mounteth vpwarde along the belly betwene the right muskle and the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue the nauell, where the extreme or vpper ende thereof diuideth it selfe in manyfolde litle braunches, meetyng and entermingling them selues with the extreme litle braunches or slippes of another lyke vayne, descending from the vppermost chestbone, downe along the inside of the chest, and the insyde of the vpper part of the belly, vntyll it meete with the foresayde mounting vayne, a litle aboue the nauell.

And ye shall note, that this vayne

braunche proceadyng from vena caua, at the highest chestbone downward along the inner side of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeldeth certayne litle slippes and small braunches of it self, betweene the ribbes into the brestes. wherefore the consent of all authours is, that by the meanes of these descendyng vayne braunches at both sides of the bodye, & the other ascending vayne braunches on both sides of the bellye, there shoulde be great communitie and felowship betweene the brestes in women, and the Matrix or the wombe.

For doutlesse by common experience, ye may see that when ỹ time of conceptiõ in women is, & that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the termes do deminishe & waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe euery day more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of blood wonte at other tymes to voyde in the name of Termes, now at this tyme by the prudentie and prouisiõ of nature, is retay-

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate another waye, that is to saye, sent from the vaynes of the Matrix parte thereof vpwarde by the forenamed ascendyng vayne branches, at their handes agayne receiued and naturally attracted by the other descendyng brest vaynes, through whom it is caryed into the brestes, where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into whyte milke, being before red blood, redy now prepared to norysshe the chylde when nature shall sende it into the worlde.

Agayne, so long as the woman geueth sucke to the chylde, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very litle or no quantitie. These be euidences that there should be great familiaritie betweene the Matrix and the brestes, forsomuch as the ebbing of the one, is the flowyng of the other: wherefore Phisitions sometimes, when the flowres issue more vehemently then nedeth, they set boryng glasses vnder the

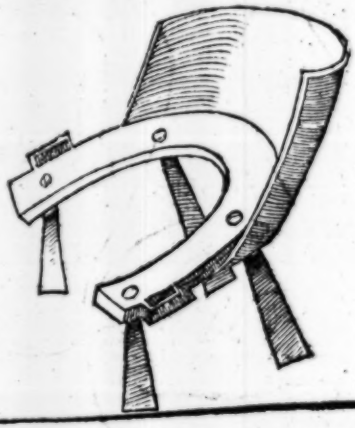
brestes, meanyng thereby to reuert and returne vpwarde, the matter enclined to much downewarde, the which practise how much it preuayleth, I wyl not here dispute. Yet in this matter to discusse the very veritie as neare as reason and the knowledge of Anothomie will geue leaue, ye shall not vnderstande my sayinges that I should meane that alwayes when the termes stop beneath by anye colde, thought, or other occasions, by and by the same blood to stye and mount vp into the brestes, & there to become milke: for the contrary hereof is dayly seene. For most commonlye they in whom these termes do stop, for any other cause then conception, the superfluous blood retayned in the bodye, and in the vaynes wandring, causeth to the partie great headache, taketh awaye their stomacke, and engendreth diuers other inconueniences, neither in the meane whyle is there any thing the more mylke in the brestes.

Wherefore ye may wel saye, that the cause

THE BIRTH FYGVRES

THE WOMANS STOOLE

THE



II

I

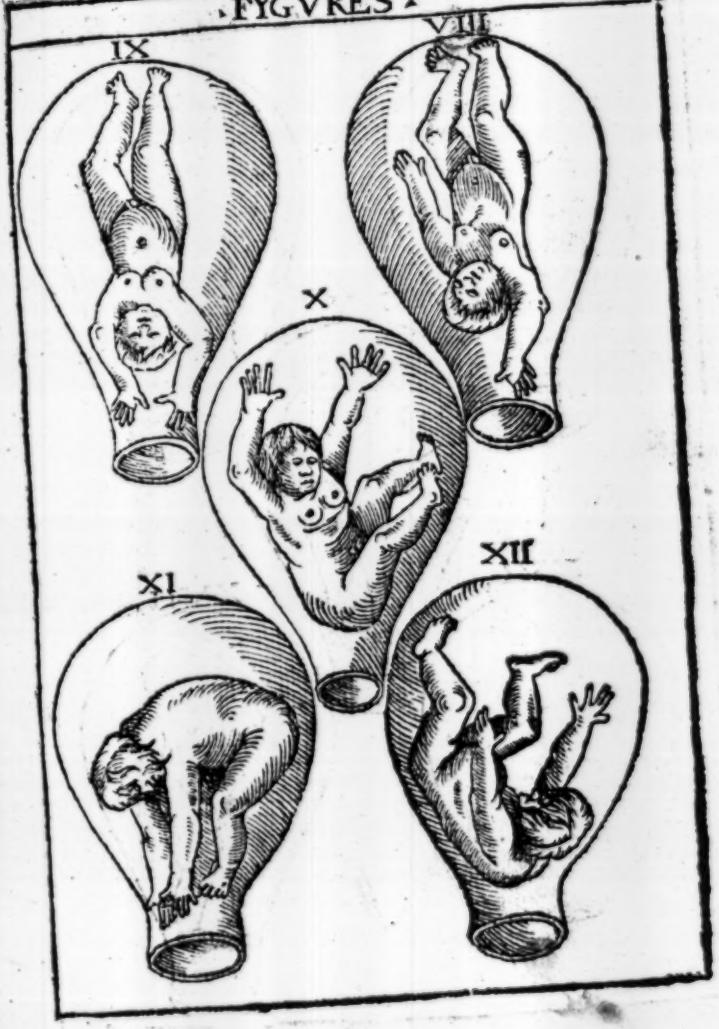
III

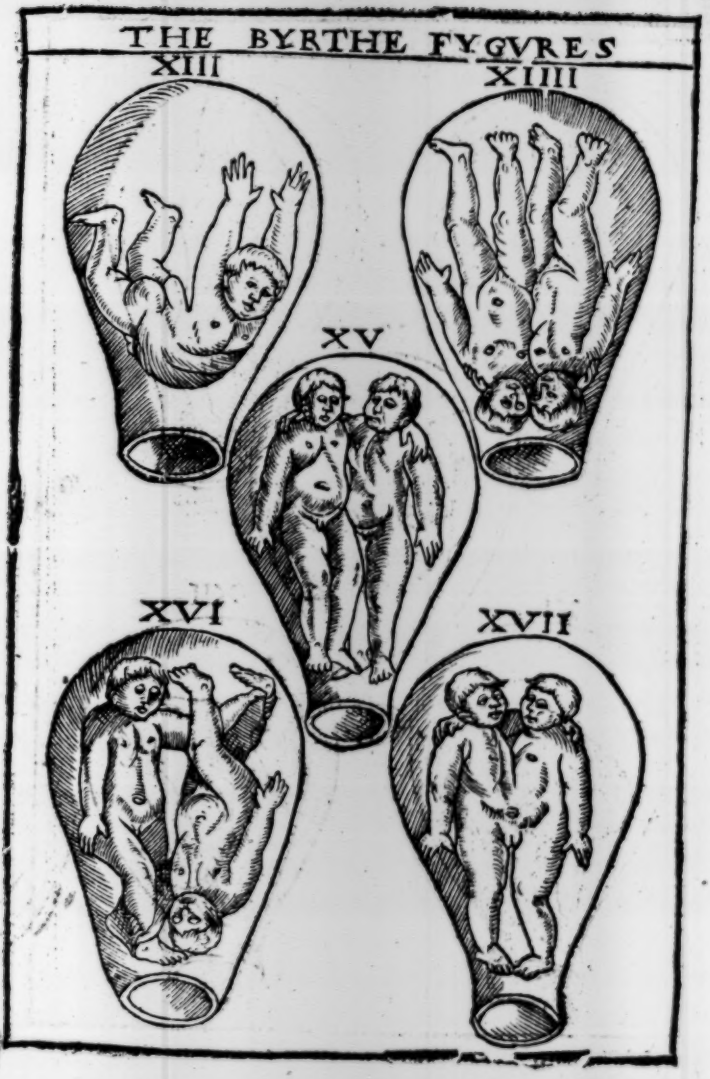
IIII

V

VI

VII


IX
VIII
X
XI
XII


THE BYRTHE FYGVRES
XIII
XIIII
XV
XVI
XVII

cause of plentie of mylke in ỹ Womans
brestes in time of her being With childe,
and much more afterwarde, commeth
chiefly by a priuie naturall instinction,
whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at
that time more then at anye other, to
drawe vnto it selfe greater abundaunce
of blood, conuertyng and alteryng the
same by the propertie of the place, into
conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenishe
the brest the Termes to be by any occa-
sion stopped beneath, but there must al-
so concurre the attractiue power, inset
in the brestes to drawe the sayde blood
(matter at other times of the Termes)
Without Which attraction, be the Ter-
mes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the
brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chaũce
that this attractiue power halte or be
not able to attract sufficient matter to
make mylke vpon for the Infant, then
Phisitiõs are Wont to helpe the debilitie
of nature, With cupping glasses set vp-
on or vnder the brestes, or els With gen-
tle

tle attractiue emplasters applied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resorte greate store of other vaynes, some descending from the vaines of the shoulders, & other some from ỹ vaines passing by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyson and notable bigneſſe, muche surmount the quantitie of the aboue named descendyng brest vaynes, as it maye appeare euidently in many Women which haue these vaynes appearing in the superficie of their brestes immediatly vnder the skin, very conspicious and sightful: yet notwithstandyng it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes should be engendred only vpon the blood mounting from the aforesayde ascendyng Matrix vaynes, and not vppon the blood conteyned in the other vaynes, howe conspicious so euer they be, so that the blood in them comprehended, serueth onlye to the noryshement of the substaunce of the brestes

bestes them selues, & not to the maintenaunce of the mylke.

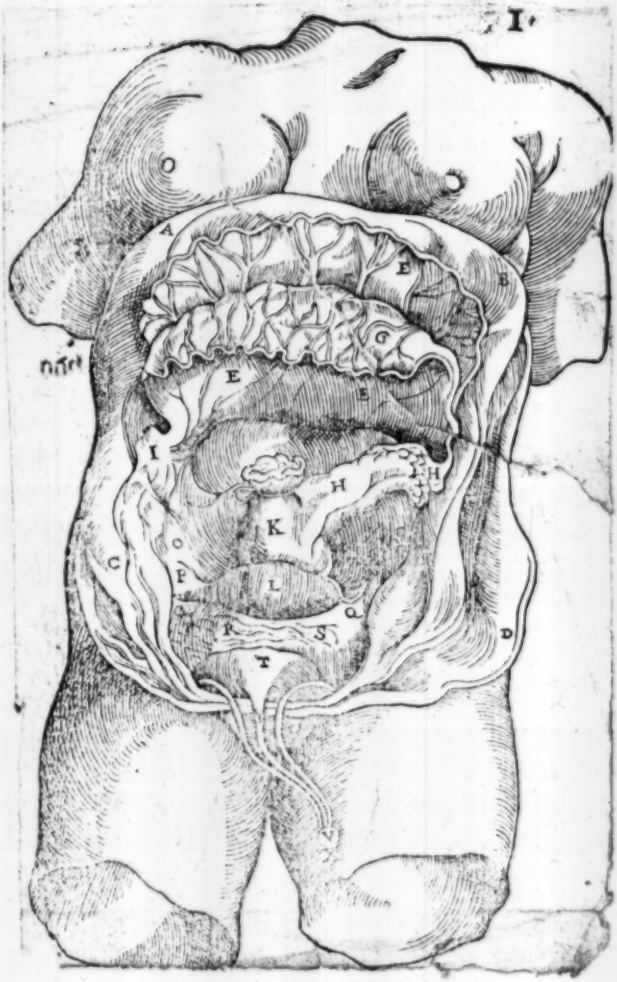
To declare here curiously the maner that nature vseth in circulatyng of the attracted blood, Wherby alterations is made from one colour to another, Wold require a longer processe, the Which for brenitie We Will omit at this time, With many other problemes, doubtes, and difficulties concernyng the same. And so We make an ende of this first booke.

¶ The declaration by letters, of the figures folowyng, wherein be set foorth to the eye, euery part in woman, mentioned in this booke before: Which in the former printinges hath ben corrupted, but nowe truely set foorth.

¶ The first figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and caracters of the same.

IN this first figure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body, laid on ỹ groũd, whose peritonium is opened with the muskels of the Abdomen, and turned ouer toward ỹ inside, according to the vse of cutting, & afterwarde we haue cut away all the bowels or entrayles from Meſenterium, the strayght entrayle beyng yet left in the bodye, with also the whole Meſenterium, whose pannicles we haue here somewhat taken awaye, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of Meſenterium might come to lyght, but this present figure is for this cause principally declared and set foorth, that it myght so shewe the position of the matrix or wombe, and the bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the sayde matrix or wombe beyng moued.

For here is as yet no pannicle plucht away from the matrix or wombe, but that all thinges are here yet wholly seene, lykewyse as in women some-


A
B
C
D
E
E
E
F
G
H
H
I
K
L
O
P
Q
R
S
T

somewhat fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be vexed and kylled with long sicknesse, and become moste leanest, then they shewe no kynde of processe of vessels, vnlesse the pannicles or thinne couerynges be seperated a sunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of Peritonium.

E E A part of Mesenterium, knitting the thinne intrayles to the backe.

F F Here is noted another pannicle of Mesenterium, plucked from the other which we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do shew the order of the vessels of Mesenterium, and order of the harnelles put betweene the distributions of the vessels.

H H In this part of Mesenterium, the entraile Colon was committed and set to, where it was nyest to the straight gut.

I And in this part of Mesenterium, did consist and stande the beginning of the intrayle Colon, or his continuaunce with the thinne intrailes, and also the blynde gut.

K The straight gutte beyng there cut of where Colon dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knitting together of the hockle bone with the lowest turnyng ioynte of the loynes.

L The former seate of ỹ bottome of the Matrix, from whence is nothyng perceyued pluct away.

M The right stone or testicle in a woman.

N The

N The lefte stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entirely seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause, that we haue in such maner set foorth the right stone: for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle bryngeth downe the seede vesselles of a woman, whiche do spryng from peritonium: but we haue vncouered the lefte testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onlye without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doeth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in anye parte thereof, but lyeth there onlye.

O A pannicle springing and growyng foorth from the right seate of peritonium, & committing the ryght testicle with the seede vesselles on this side, and those vessels whiche infolde the higher seate of the Matrix to the backe, contayning together the Matrix or wombe, and afterwarde with the pannicle of the other side, constituting the seconde cote of the Matrix.

P This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne foorth fleshy fibres or thinne skynnes, constituyng the ryght Muskle of the Matrix or wombe.

QQ With these characters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and lyke to that pannicle, which the foresayd OO did poynt to vs.

R S The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betwene R and S with that cote

which

which ỹ partes of peritonium offer vnto it, which bring forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knitte it to peritonium: but the space beyng betwene R and S doth shewe the largenesse of the necke of the Matrix. And the wrynkles whiche are seene here, are they whiche the necke of the Matrix fallyng into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shewe in the cutting.

T The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefelye seene, for we haue so caste our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hynder seate of the bladder, whiche loketh towarde the Matrix.

For yf ye wyll suppose and imagine this bodye of a woman, to be set vpryght as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwyse then the thing is, that the bottome of the Matrix is set forth much higher then the bladder.

V This is a portion of the nauell, deliuered in the cutting from peritonium, and tourned ouer together with the vesselles seruing properlye to the chylde.

X A portion of a bayne goyng from the Nauell to the lyuer.

Y A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder pertaynyng vnto the Nauell, and bryngyng from thence the brine of the chylde, betweene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Shew

Ket & Shew two artires creeping forth hyther from the Nauell, by the sides of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the braunches of the great artire, going principally to the holes of the bones aboue the priuie members.

¶ The declaration of the seconde figure of the members of women, and of the characters of the same.

WE haue here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates myght, as nygh as maye be, be set before the eyes, & afterward we haue cut awaye the ventricle with the bowels, and also Mesenterium and the splene, leauing the strayght entrayle in this place vnmedled with, alwell as we dyd in the figure before. And moreouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermost cote whiche Peritonium gaue vnto it, cutting away also all the pannicles, that the vessels carying forth the substaunce and matter of seede to the stones, and also the vesselles carying awaye the seede from thence to the Matrix, should appeare and be seene. Also we haue tourned ouer the bladder downewarde on the lefte syde, lykewyse breakyng

breakyng the way or conduite whiche beareth forth the vrine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the vrine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder shoulde not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones aboue the priuie members, that the neckes of the Matrix and of the bladder myght the more commodiously be seene.

AA Vaynes runnyng forth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the shynne, whiche is brought ouer the heyght of the shoulder.

B Vaynes springyng from those vaynes whiche are led forth by the arme hole to the hande.

C The principall body of the teate.

DD Karnels and fatnesse spreade abroade euery where on the karnelly body, marked with C.

EFGH The hynder outsyde or inside of the former seate of Peritoneum outward. For the former region of Peritoneum is here bowed vpward and downewarde towarde the syde.

IK Portions of Vaynes and also Arteries, creepyng forth downeward, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L The gybosyte or swellyng seate of the lyuer.

M The holow part of the lyuer is here also somewhat seene.

N A small portion or peece of the Vayne goyng from the Nauill to the lyuer.

O The stocke of vena porta is here cut away, with

the vesselles brought vnto it.

P The holowe vayne.

Q The great artyre.

R The rootes of the artyres goyng to the ventricle, the lyuer, the spleane, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S The begynnyng of a vayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.

T The vayne and artyre whiche bryngeth the whayishe humour to the ryght kydney.

V The vayne and artyre whiche bryngeth the whayishe humour into the left kydney.

X The begynnyng of the vayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.

Y The former seate of the ryght kydney.

Z The former seate of the left kydney.

aa The way that bryngeth the vrine from the ryght kydney into the bladder, but at the nethermour a is broken away but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder, marked with b.

b The way that caryeth foorth the vrine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.

cc The way that caryeth foorth the vrine from the left kydney into the bladder.

dd The ryght seede vayne, whose begynnyng the hygher d doth shewe.

e The seede vayne goyng to the left testicle.

f The sprynging foorth of the artyres of seede.

g The ryght seede artyre.

h The left seede artyre.

ikl The former part of the bottome of the Ma-

tri-

trix, and i sheweth the ryght blunt angle or corner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the left, but l sheweth the region or place of the matrix, where the mouth of his bottome consysteth, and where his necke begynneth.

m This is the strayte gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the characters but on the one syde only.

n A portion of the bayne and artyre of seede, whiche do go to the vpper syde of the bottome of the wombe.

o Portions of the baynes and artyre of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioynyng and goyng together, and constituting.

p A body lyke the spire of a steeple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote or foundation of this body, whereas the sayde roote or foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q From that sayde body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, commyttyng and ioynyng the testicle to Peritonium.

r The former face or part of the testicle.

s The begynnyng of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

tt The bowinges and turninges ouer agayne of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede, which turnynges the sayde vessell maketh round about the sydes of the testicle.

v The goyng forth of the vessell whiche caryeth forth the seede of the Matrix.

xx The necke of the Matrix.

y Uessels folding in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z A vayne commyng from those vesselles to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karacter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the brine.

μβ The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

r The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

ʌ In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

s Small skinnie portions of flesh of the necke of the mouth or openyng of the wombe or Matrix, and the small hyllockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, neede here no speciall declaration with Karacters.

ʒ The roote of the Artire, goyng into the lowest part of Mesenterium.

α Uessels which do ascende and ryse vpwarde to the muskles of the Abdomen, from the Uaynes and Artyres whiche do go into the legge.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the thirde figure of women.

THis present figure sheweth the matrix or wombe, with the thynne couerynges whiche do bynde it to *Peritonæum*, cut sooth from the bodye, and the

the necke therof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or openyng of the bottome of the matrix doth here manyfestlye shewe it selfe. And we haue lykewyse so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownes of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manyfestlye sene.

A The former face of the bottome of the matrix, being not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

BB The necke of the matrix.

C A parte of the bottome of the matrix, swellyng foorth into the vpper seate of the necke of the matrix, in maner of a kirnell.

D The mouth of the bottome of the matrix.

EE A pannicle knitting the matrix to *Peritoneum*, and conteynyng his vesselles.

F The left testicle of the matrix.

G The vayne and artire of seede.

H Portion of the seede vayne and artyre, commynge to the vpper seate of the bottome of the matrix.

I A portion of the seede vayne and artyre, commyng to the testicle.

K The vessell carying the seede from the testicle into the matrix.

L The holownesse of the bladder.

M The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N Here hangeth forth a lytle peece of the wayes of the brine:

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the fourth table of women.

ε SMall braunches running foorth into the pannicle, where they are committed and ioyned to Peritonium.

ι A portion of the Vayne and artire going into the testicle, fallyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the matrix.

μ The commixtion and goyng together of the seede vayne and artyre, that is lyke the spire of a steeple, whiche we lyken to the braded vaynes called Varices.

λ The left testicle.

μμ The vessell carying foorth the seede from the testicle into the matrix.

υ The blunte angle or corner of the bottome of the matrix, in whom the vessell that bryngeth foorth the seede attempteth his insertion.

ε In this seate the bottome of the matrix is ended into the necke thereof, and in this region or place is the begynnyng of the mouth or openyng place thereof.

θ τυ The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

ε Here the necke of the bladder is brought forth into the necke of the matrix, and there endeth.

ς Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of the bottome of the matrix, and also his necke.

ττ The swellyng brymmes at the mouth of the necke of the matrix.

The

w The wayes that bryng the brine from the raynes into the bladder.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the.v.vi. vii.and.viii.figures.

E haue nowe diuided this fyfth table of the wombe or Matrix, conteynynge a male chylde on the former ſyde, with a long ſection or cut, and another whiche are ouerthwart ſlytte, remouyng and takyng awaye into the ſydes, partes of the coates of the bottome of the matrix, yea, euen from the vttermoſt infolder of the chylde.

ABCD The inner ſyde of the ſayde infolder of the matrix, whiche before the ſection was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chylde.

EE The vtter ſyde of the matrix, and the hygher E noteth the top or the ryght angle or corner of the matrix, brought forth vpwarde and toward the ryght ſyde, more then towarde the left, becauſe it is a man chylde which is in ꝑ wombe.

F The fyrſte or the vttermoſte infolder of the chylde.

GG The ſeconde infolder of the chylde is here

allo a great part seene.

H A part of the necke of the matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a vayne and an artire, whiche is pryncipally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the matrix.

I Here is allo yet left the ryght testicle, that the situation of it myght be seene and perceaued in women beyng with chylde.

¶ The syxte table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the Matrix, and not broken.

K THE vttermoste infolder of the chylde.

LL The second infolder of the child, whiche forsomuche as it is transpernaunt in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde (bewrapt within this third infolder) in it somewhat to be seene.

In the seuenth table we haue diuided the vtter and the seconde infolder of the chylde, with a longe section or cutte, and we haue here expressed and shewed forth both the sayde infolders, taken away from the thirde infolder, and the thirde infolder allo yet whole.

MM The thynde or the innoste infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one maye easyly see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N The proceedyng or order of Waynes and Artires, goyng to the Nauyll from the fyrst infolder of the chylde.

OPOP The seconde infolder of the chylde.

And OO shewe his inſyde, where PP sheweth his vtter syde.

QR The fyrste infolder of the chylde, where Q noteth the outſyde, and R the inſyde, but the proceedyng and order of the veſſelles by the seconde and the thyrde infolder, are perfectly knowen without any helpe of the Karacters.

AND the eyght Table expreſſeth the chylde delyuered from al his coates, and so it sheweth hym lying, by the wonderfull prouidence of nature, not as the common opinion of the vulgar sorte of wryters affirmeth, but as you may here see in theſe figures, & so doth it lye in the middeſt of the wombe. For it is moſte vntrue that the chylde doth lye in the wombe rounde, lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees shoulde touche to the face, but as he is set here in the viii. figure. And obſeruyng this true ſituation of him, you shall fynde commonly none other ſituation of the chylde, nor ioynyng of any ioynt of hym therein, then is here expreſſed.

But in this figure MMNOPOPQ&R do note the same as in the seuenth Table, saue that M and M do shewe the inſyde, or inner part of the thyrde infolder. But S sheweth here priuately the goyng forth of the veſſelles of the

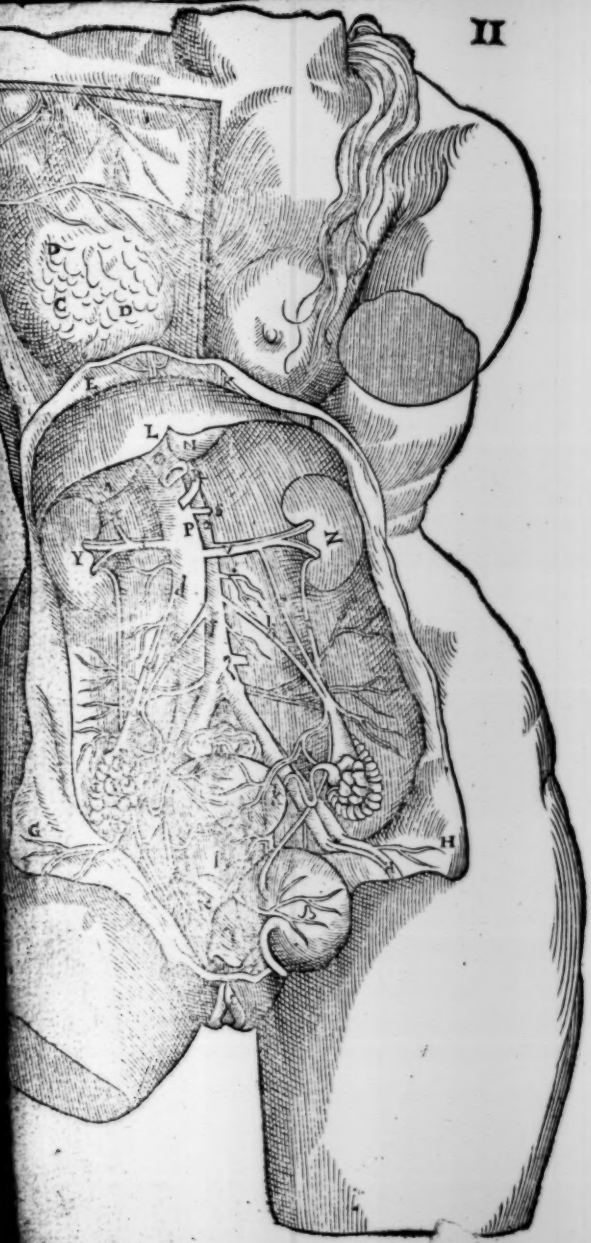
Nauyll

Nauyll, whiche is betweene the Nauyll and the ioynyng together of the vessels with the thyrde infolder, which is also brought foorth with a great space betweene the shewyng, where be certayne (as it were) knottes or swellynges, accordyng to the number of the whiche knottes more or lesse, Mydwyues foolyshlye do prophesie eyther many or fewe chyldren to the woman, whiche of the learned men is taken but for a very fantasye, and worthye of reprehention. And moreouer, when the chylde commeth foorth (as it chaunceth sometymes) hauyng that about his necke, they say that it is the same chyldes destynye to be hanged, with many other foolyshe conceytes, rather to be laughed at, then to be beleued.

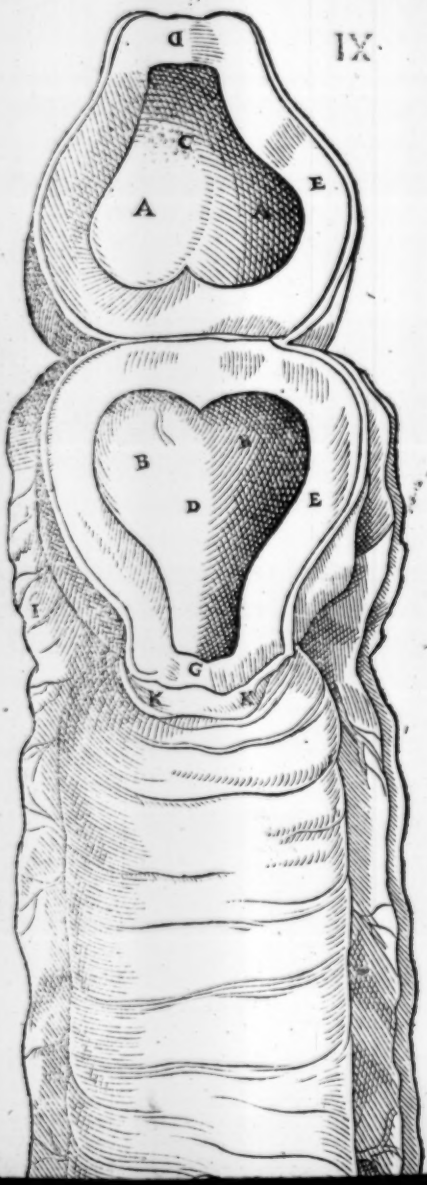
The declaration of the Karacters of the nynth figure of women.

AND the nynth figure sheweth the matrix cut foorth of the bodye, beyng of that bygnesse as it was seene taken foorth of a woman at the laste Anothomye which I did see at the vniuersitie of Padua in Italie. And moreouer we haue so diuided and cutte asunder the bottome of the Matrix by the myddle, that the concauitie and hollowe bought within the same myght be perceaued, and the thycke substaunce also of both the coates of the Matrix in women, when they

II



IV.


IX
D
C
A
A
E
B
B
D
E
I
G
K
K

L
M

V
F
C
D
H

IIV

IIIV

they be not with chylde.

AABB The concauitie and holow bought of the bottome of the matrix.

CD A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latine Scortum, which doth belong to the place wherein the testicle doth lye, whiche swa[illegible]th somewhat foorth into the bought of the bottome of the matrix.

EE The thicknes of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the matrix.

FF A portion of the innermer bottome of the matrix, swellyng foorth downewarde from the hygher seate of the matrix, into the holownesse and bought of the bottome.

GG The beginning of the necke or opening place of the bottome of the matrix.

HH The seconde or vttermer infolder of the bottome of the matrix, descended from Peritonium.

II Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from Peritonium, and conteynyng the matrix.

K Here is also seene the substaunce of the necke of the matrix, because the cuttyng wherewith we diuided the bottome of the matrix, was begun at this place.

L A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the matrix, castyng foorth into it the vrine. The swellyng partes of Abdomen and whatsoeuer is els to be consydered thereof, they may be sufficiently knowen without direction of Karacters.

FINIS.

¶ Of the tyme of byrth. And which is called naturall or vnnaturall Cap. i.

IN the first booke we haue sufficientlye set foorth and described the maner, situation, & fourme of the Matrix wherein man is conceaued, with dyuers other matters appendyng and concernyng the better vnderstandyng of the same. And nowe here in this seconde Booke, we wyll declare the maner of the quytyng and deliueraunce of the Infant out of the mothers wombe, with other thinges therto appertaynyng. And first here in this Chapter we wyl declare the tokens and signes whereby ye may perceaue whether the tyme of labour be neare or not: For when the houre of labour approcheth neare, these signes folowing euermore proceade and come before.

Tokens to know when the tyme of deliuerance is neare.

First certaine dolours and paines begyn to growe about the guttes, the nauyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and like-

lykewyse about the thyghes, and the other places beyng neare to the priuie partes, Which lykewyse then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is neere.

Two sortes of deliuerance.

But ye shall note that there is two maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashion. The due season is most commonly after the ninth moneth, or about fortie wekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eyght moneth, other thei be dead before the birth, or els liue not long after.

The due fashion of byrth.

The due fashion of birth is this: first the head commeth forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body towarde the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde beyng towardes the face and

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrste of the byrth figures. For as hath ben sayde alredye in the fyrst booke, before the tyme of delyueraunce, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head vpward, and the feete dowmeward, but when it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrarye, the head dowmeward, the feete vpwarde, and the face towardes the mothers bellye, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the delyueraunce is easie without long tarying or lookyng for it.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is delyuered before her tyme, or out of due season, or after anye other fashion then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges proceede first, or one alone, with both the handes vp, or both dowme, other els the one vp and the other dowme, and diuers otherwise, as shalbe hereafter more clearelye declared.

Of

Of easie and vneasie, difficult, or dolourous delyueraunce, and the causes of it: With the signes howe to knowe and foresee the same. Cap.ii.

Many perils chaunsing to women in theyr labour.

VEry many be the perylles, daungers, and thronges, which chaunce to Women in theyr labour, Whiche also ensue and come in diuers wayes, and for dyuers causes, suche as I shall here declare.

Fyrst when the woman that laboureth is conceaued ouer young, as before xii. or xb. yeres of age (Whiche chaunseth sometyme, though not very often) and that the passage be ouer angust, streate, or narowe, other naturallye, or els for some disease and infirmitie, Whiche may happen about the parte, as apostumes, pusshes, pyles, or blysters, and suche other. Through the Whiche causes, nature can not (but With great dolour and payne) open and dilate it selfe, to the expellyng and deliueraunce of

of the chylde. And sometime the beslicke or bladder, or other intrayles beyng about the Matrix or Wombe, be also apostumate and blystered, Whiche beyng greeued, the Matrix or Wombe likewise for vicinitie and neighbourhead is greeued with them, & that hindereth greatlye the deliuerance. Also sometyme in the fundement are humorrhodes or pilles and other pushes, chappynges or chynes, Whiche cause great payne. Also hardnesse and difficultie or byndyng of the belly, Whiche thinges for the greefe and payne that ensueth of them, causeth the woman to haue lytle power to helpe her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, yf the partie be weake and of feble complexion, or of nature very colde, or to young, or very aged, or exceedyng grosse and fatte, or contrarywyse to spare and leane, or that she neuer had childe before, or that she be ouer timorious and fearefull, dyuers, Waywarde, or such one that wyll not be ruled, remouyng her selfe from one place

to

to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche more paynefull, cruell and dolorous, then it woulde otherwyse be. Also ye must vnderstande that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and greater groweth, then that it may easly passe that narowe passage, or contrarywise, yf it be so faint, weake and tender, that it can not turne it selfe, or doth it very slowly, or if the woman haue two chyldren at once, other els that it with the whiche she laboureth, be a monster: as for example, yf it hath but one bodye & two heades, as appeareth in the .xvii. of the birth figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, when it proceedeth not in due tyme, or after due fashion, as when it commeth forth with both feete or both knees together, or els with one foote onlye, or with both feete downewardes, and both handes vpwardes, other els (the whiche is most perillous)

sidelong, arselong, or backlong, other els (hauing two at a byrth) both proceede with their feete fyrst, or one with his feete, and the other with his head, by those and dyuers other wayes the woman sustayneth great dolour, paine, and anguyshe.

Item, yf the woman sucker aborsement, that is to saye, bryng forth her childe in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the conception, whiche is before the due tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the porte of the wombe is so firmely and strongly enclosed, that vnneth the point of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the child be dead in the mothers belly, it is a very perillous thing, for so much as it can not be easily turned, neyther can it welde or helpe it selfe to come forth, or if the child be sicke or weakened so that it cānot for feblenes helpe it selfe.

To knowe whether the chylde be weake in the mothers belly.

The which thing may be foresene and knowen by these tokēs: If the woman with chylde haue ben long sicke before her

her labour, yf she haue ben sore lasked, if after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwontly her flowres, yf strayght after one moneth vpon the conception, her brestes yelde any mylke, if the childe stirre not, ne moue at suche tyme as is conuenient for it, these be argumentes and tokens that it shuld be very weake. By what tokens ye shall knowe it is dead, I shall shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great peril in labouring, when the secondine or latter birth is ouer fyrme or strong, and wyll not soone riue or breake a sunder, so that the child may haue his easy cõming forth. And contrarywyse, when it is ouer weake, slender or thin, so that it breaketh a sunder before that the chylde be turned, or apt to issue forth, for then the humours whiche are collect & gathered together about this secondine or seconde byrth, passe away soner then they shoulde do, & the birth shal lack his due humidities and moistures, which shuld cause it the easelyer to proceede, & with lesse payne. Peril in the secondine.

Excesse of heate or cold greatly hindereth the labour.

The birth also is hyndered by ouermuche colde, or ouermuche heate, for in ouermuch colde, the passage and all other powers of the labouring woman, be coarcted and made narower then they woulde otherwyse be. Lykewyse ouer much heate debiliteth, weakeneth and faynteth both the woman and the chylde, so that neither of them in that case, can well weld or helpe them selues for fayntnes.

And farther yf the woman haue vsed to eate cõmonly suche meate or fruites which do exiccate or drie, and constraine or binde, as Medlars, Chestnuts, and all sowre fruites, as Crabbes, Chokeperes, Quinces, and such other, with ouer muche vse of Uergeus, and suche lyke sowre sauces, with Rise, Mill, and many other thinges, al this shall greatlye hinder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the fifth moneth folowyng the conception, or to bathe in such water where Alome is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges

Whiche

whiche do coarcte and constrayne, or yf she haue ben oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at ease, or yf she haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurstie, or haue vsed ouer much watch and walkyng: eyther if she vsed a litle before her labour thinges of great odour, smell or sauour, for suche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe vpward the mother or Matrix, the which is great hynderaunce to the byrth.

Also yf the woman feele payne onlye in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a signe of harde labour: lykewyse if she were wont in times passed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great labour alwayes in the birth.

Nowe signes and tokens of an expedite and easy deliueraunce, be suche as be contrary to all those that haue ben rehearsed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes passed easyly to be deliuered, and that in her labour she feele but litle thyng

Tokens of easy deliueraunce.

or dolor, or though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the neather partes or bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all painefull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good spede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, muche stirring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paines tombling in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and mightie of nature, such as can wel and strongly helpe her self to the deliueraunce of the birth. And againe, euill signes be those, When she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer sore, and that she her selfe in the labouring faint and sowne, these be vnluckie and mortall signes.

How owe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue hard labour. Capit. iii.

TO succour and helpe them that are in such difficult perill of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye muste obserue, kepe & marke those thinges that we shal (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowyng.

How the labour maye be made more easy.

First the woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must eschue & forbeare al such occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng which can not be auoyded, forsomuch as it commeth by nature, or by long continuaunce and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, molifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder the birth so much the lesse.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatiō

chaunce about the mother or the prime part, or about the beſike or bladder, as the ſtone, the ſtrangury, and ſuch lyke, the whiche thinges maye cauſe ſuche ſtraytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or diſcharged. In theſe caſes it behoueth ſuch thinges to be loked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of ſome expert Surgion.

Alſo if the woman be ouermuch conſtipat or bounde, moſt commonly ſhe muſt vſe, the moneth before her labour, ſuche thynges the which may lenifie, mollifie, diſſolue, and loſe the belly, as apples fryed with ſuger, taken faſtyng in the mornyng, and after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tempred with the iuyce of ſwete and very ripe apples.

Alſo to eate figges in the mornyng faſting, and at night, loſeth well the belly. If theſe profite not, Caſsia fiſtula taken iii. or .iiii. drams one halfe houre before dyner, ſhall loſe the belly without peril.

Againe

Agayne, in this case she must refrayne from all such thinges as do harden, restrayne, and constipat, as meates broyled or rosted, and ryce, hard egges, bieke, chestnuttes, and all sowre fruites, and suche lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she may receaue a clyster, but it must be very gentle and easye, made of a pynt of the broth of a chickin, or other tender flesshe, thereto putting so muche course suger or hony, as may make it reasonably sweete, & halfe a sponefull of whyte salt. Or for the poore woman maye be made a clyster of a pint of water, wherin hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke, with hony and salt, as before. She may vse also some other easy and temperate purgation, to molifie and lose her withall, as Mercury sodden with flesh in potage, and diuers such other, or els a suppositer tempered with sope, larde, or the yolkes of egges. Thinges to lose ỹ belly.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour drawing neare) she waxe faynt or sickelye, Wherwith to comfort the woman in her labour.

lye, then must ye comfort her with good comfortable meate, drinke, holsome and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynges the whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such thinges the which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth maye the more freely proceede, and that chiefly in the yonger women. The elder women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thinges, which haue propertie to lenifie and souple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outwarde fomentations, bathynges, suppositories, and annoyntmentes.

Ointments to souple.

Annointmentes Wherewith ye may sople the priue place, be these, Hennes greece, Duckes greece, Goose greece, also oyle Olive, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscosite of holyoke, and such other: ❧ for drynke, let her vse good rype wine mixed with water: also there

there muste be a consyderation in the dieting of the Woman, that she maye vse suche thinges the Whiche may moysten her, and not make her fatte. Contrary Wyse, let her auoyde such thynges the Whiche shoulde exicate, dryye, constrayne, or coarct her, and that all the moneth before her labour. But about ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele anye payne or greefe) let her vse euery day to Washe or bathe her With warme water, in the Whiche also that she tarye not ouerlong in bathyng for Weakning of her, and therein let her stande, so that the Water come aboue the nauyll a litle, and also seathe in the Water Mallowes, Holyoke, Camomell, Mercurie, Maydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke seede, and suche other thynges Whiche haue vertue to mollifie and sople. And yf it be so, that for Weakenesse of the body she may not endure this bathyng in warme Water, then With a spounge or other cloth dypped in the foresayde bath, let her sokyngly Washe her feete, her

Bathes to lose & gentlye to open the body.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the whiche thynges shall greatly profite to her. But in such tyme beware ye come not in the common hot houses, for they would cause you to be feeble and faynt, which were yll in this case.

And when ye are thus bathed or washed, then shall it be very conuenient for you to annoynt with the forsayde greces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyl, sydes, and suche places as are neare to the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shalbe greatly profitable for her to conuey inwarde into the priuie part these forsayd oyles or greeces with a spunge, or other thyng made for the purpose, she lying vpright, the middes of her bodye most hyest, so that it maye the better remayne within her, and that chiefely yf the Matrix be drie, other els the partie very leane and spare.

Annoynt-mentes to sople.

Sweete fumes.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to suffume the nether places with Muske, Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on embres, yelde a goodly sauour, by the which

whiche the neather places open themselfe, and drawe downewarde.

Also as I sayde before, she must take good hede to her diet, that she take thinges the which may comfort and strengthen the body, feeding not ouermuch of any thing, and to drinke pleasaunt and well sauering wine, or other drinke, also moderatly to exercise the body in doyng some thing, styrring, mouing, goyng, or standyng, more then otherwyse she was wont to do, these thinges farther the byrth and make it the easier, and this is the maner of diet the which we aduise the woman to kepe the moneth before her labour or longer.

Another dyet there is, the whiche she ought to obserue in the tyme of labour, when the stormes and throngs begyn to come on, and the humours which yet hitherto haue remained about the Matrix or mother collected, nowe begynne to flowe foorth, and this maner of dyet consisteth in two sortes. First that suche thinges be procured & had in redinesse, whiche

What is to be done whē the time of labour is come.

Whiche may cause the byrth or labour to be very easy. Secondly to withstand, defende, and to put awaye so neare as may be the instant and present dolours. And as touching this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit still, then (rysing agayne) to go vp and downe a payre of stayres, crying or reachyng so loude as she can, so to styrre her selfe.

And also it shalbe verye good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that through that meanes, the guttes and intrayles be thrust together, and depressed downewarde. Also it shalbe very good to receaue some medicine to prouoke the birth, of the which we wyll speake more hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceaueth the Matrix or Mother to ware lare or loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours issue foorth in greate plentie, then shal it be meete for her to sit downe leaning backwarde in maner vpryght. For the which purpose in some regions (as

Of the Midwifes stoole.

(as in Fraunce & Germany) the Mid-wifes haue stoles for the nonce, whiche beyng but lowe, and not hye from the grounde, be made so compasse wyse and caue or holowe in the middes, that that may be receaued from vnderneth Whi-che is looked for, and the backe of the stoole leaning backward, receaueth the backe of the woman: the fashion of the whiche stoole, is set in the begynning of the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the tyme of labour is come, in the same stoole ought to be put many clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the which the Midwife may remoue from one side to another, according as necessitie shall require. The Midwife her selfe shall sit before the labouryng woman, and shall diligentlye obserue and wayte, how much, and after what meanes the chylde styrreth it selfe: also shall with her handes, fyrst annoyn-ted with the oyle of Almondes, or the oyle of Whyte Lillies, rule and dy-rect euery thyng as shall seeme best.

Also

The Mydwyfe must geue comfortable wordes to the partie trauayling.

Also the Mydwyfe muste enstruct and comfort the partie, not onlye refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with sweete Wordes, geuyng her good hope of a spedefull deliueraunce, encouraging and enstomakyng her to patience and tolleraunce, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as she may, also strekyng gentilly with her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downewarde.

But and yf the woman be any thing grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lye groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downewarde, annoynting also the priuie partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Mydwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straightes, (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe well to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Midwyfe aboue all

all thynges take heede of that she compel not the woman to labour before the byrth come forward, and shewe it selfe. For before that tyme, all laboure is in vayne, labour as much as ye lyste. And in this case many tymes it commeth to passe, that the partie hath laboured so sore before the time, that when she shuld labour in deede, her might and strength is spent before in vayne, so that she is not now able to helpe her selfe, and that is a perrilous case.

To labour much before the due time doth but feble the woman, and nothing profit

Furthermore, when the Secondine or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth is wrapped and conteyned) doth once appeare, then maye ye knowe that the labour is at hand. Wherfore if the same secondine breake not of his owne kinde, it shalbe the Midwyfes part and office, with her nayles easily and gentellye to breake and rent it, or yf that maye not conueniently be done, then rayse vp betwene your fingers a peece of it, and cut it of with a payre of sheares, or sharpe knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

with the cut. This done, by and by ensueth consequently the flux and flowe of humours, of the whiche I spake before, and then next followeth immediatlye the byrth.

But yf it so chaunce that the Secondine should be cut by the Mydwyfe, and all the watery part issued and spent before due time & necessitie shoulde require it, so that the priuie passage be lefte excate and drye, the byrth not yet appearyng, by this meanes the laboure shoulde be hindered and letted. In this case ye shall annoynt and molifie that priuie passage with the oyle of whyte Lylyes, or some of the greases spoken of before, fyrst warmed, and so conueyed into the priuie partes, the whiche thynges wyll cause the waye to be slyppery, souple, and easie for the birth to passe. But cheefely in these difficulties should profite the whyte of an egge, together with the yolke powred into the same place, whiche should cause it to be most slypperye and slydyng, and supplye the

roome

roome of the naturall humidities spent before.

And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the commyng foorth, then muste the Mydwyfe helpe all that she may, with her hande fyrst annoynted with some oyle, openyng and enlargyng the way, that the issue may be the freer. Lykewyse must be done yf she beare two childzen at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, when that fyrst proceedeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordinately, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowing. The head proceedyng fyrst.

ii. But when the byrth commeth not naturally, then must the Mydwyfe do all her diligence and payne (if it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye with her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaũceth the chyld to come the legges & both armes & handes downward, close to the sydes fyrst foorth, as appeareth The legges & both handes downe, proceedyng fyrst.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Mydwyfe must do all her payne with tender handlyng and annoyntyng to receaue foorth the chylde, the legges beyng still close together, and the handes likewise remaynyng, as appeareth in the sayde seconde figure. Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Mydwyfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst foorth, vpwardes agayne by the bellyward, so that the head myght descende downeward by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturallye agayne and without peryll myght it proceede and come foorth as the fyrst.

The third of the byrth figures.

iii. Agayne sometyme the byrth commeth forth with both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lyfted vp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perillouſt maner of birth that is, as appeareth in the third of the birth figures. And here must the Mydwyfe do what she may to turne the byrth (yf it may be

possible) to the first figure, and yf it wyll not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the seconde figure. But yf this also wyll not be, then receaue the feete as they come forth, and bynde them with some fayre lynnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the byrth tyll all be come forth, and this is a very ieopardous labour.

iiii. Also sometyme the byrth commeth foorth with one foote onlye, the other being left vpwarde, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouryng woman to lay her vpryght vppon her backe, holdyng vp her thyghes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her bodye, then let the Mydwyfe with her hande returne in agayne the foote that commeth out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth to styrre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styrryng, the byrth maye be turned the head downeward, and so

The fourth figure.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the Woman in the stoole agayne, and to do as ye dyd in the fyrste figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstandyng the mother's styrryng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Mydwyfe with her hande softlye fetche out the other legge whiche remayned behynde, euermore takyng heede of this, that by handlyng of the chylde, she do not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hangyng downewarde towarde the feete.

The fyfth figure.

v. Lykewyse sometyme it commeth to passe, that the syde of the chylde commeth forwarde, as appeareth in the. v. figure, and then must the Mydwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his naturall fassion, and so to come forth.

The syxth figure.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde commeth foorth the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abroade, as in the. vi. figure, and then must the Midwife see, that the feete and legges may be ioyned together, and so to proceede and come forth,

euer-

euermore regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees or both forwarde, as in the .vii. figure, then must the Mydwyfe put vp the birth, til such times as the legges & feete come ryght forth, & then to do as afore. The .vii. figure.

viii. When the chylde cõmeth headlong, one of the handes commyng out and appearyng before, as in the. viii. figure, then let the byrth proceede no farther, but let the Mydwyfe put in her hande, and tenderly by the shoulders thruste in the byrth agayne, so that the hand may be resetteled in his place, and the byrth to come forth ordinately and naturally, as in the fyrst figure: But yf by this meanes the hande come not to his conuenient place, then let the woman lye vpryght with her thyghes and belly vpwardes, and her head downewardes, so that by that meanes it may be brought to passe, and then bryng her to her seate agayne. The eyght figure.

ix. But yf it proceede with bothe The nynth figure.

handes forwardes, then muſte ye lykewiſe do as afore, by the ſhoulders thruſtyng it backe agayne, vntyll ſuche tyme as the handes lye cloſe to the ſides, & ſo to come forth, as apeareth in the.ix.figure.

The.x.figure.

x. But when it commeth arſwarde, as in the .x. figure may be ſeene, then muſt the Mydwife with her handes returne it agayne, vntyll ſuche tyme that the birth be turned, the legges and feete forwarde: other els, yf it maye be ſo, it were beſt that the head might come forwarde, and ſo naturally to proceede.

The.xi.figure.

xi. And yf ſo be that it appeare and come forth firſt with the ſhoulders, as in the.xi. figure, then muſt ye fayre and ſoftlye thruſt it backe agayne by the ſhoulders, tyll ſuche tyme as the head come forwarde.

The.xii.figure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth foorth with both the handes and both the feete at once, as in the .xii. figure, then muſt the Mydwyfe tenderly take the chylde by the head, and returne the legges vpwarde, & ſo to receaue it forth.

xiii. And

xiii. And when it commeth brestward as in the.xiii. figure, the legges and handes bydyng behynde, then let the Mydwyfe take it by the feete or by the head, whiche that shalbe moste apt and commodious to come forwarde, returnyng the rest vpward, & so to receaue it forth: but if it may be hedling, that shalbe best. The.xiii. figure.

xiiii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth the woman to haue two at a burthen, & that both proceede together headlong, as in the.xiiii. figure, and then must the Mydwyfe receaue the one after the other, but so, that she let not slyppe the one, whyleste she taketh the fyrst. The.xiiii. figure.

xv. If both come forth at once with theyr feete forward, then must the Midwife be very diligent to receaue first the one, and then the other, as hath ben shewed before. The.xv. figure.

xvi. When the one commeth headlong, the other footewyse, then must the Mydwyfe helpe the byrth that is moste nearest the issue, and it that commeth footelong (if she can) to returne it vppon The.xvi figure.

the

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng euer heede that the one be not noysome to the other in receauyng foorth of eyther of them.

And to be short, let the Mydwyfe often tymes annoynt & mollifie the waye and passage with some of the foresayde oyntmentes, to make the womans labour so muche the easier, and haue the lesse trauayle and payne. And yf there chaunce to be any Apostume or disease about those places in this tyme, by suche annoyntyng to alaye and swage the payne, so that for the tyme it may be the lesse greeke to the partie, as I spake before also. And for them that be in this case, it shalbe best to lye grouelyng, as I sayde of the grosse, fatte, and fleshy woman.

Remedies and medicines by the which the labour may be made more tollerable, easy, and without great payne.
Cap. v.

The

The thynges whiche helpe the birth & make it more easie, are these. First the woman that laboureth muste eyther sytte groueling, or els vpright, leaning backwarde, accordyng as it shall seeme commodious and necessary to the partie, or as she is accustomed. And in wynter or colde weather, the chamber wherin she laboureth must be warmed, but in sommer or hotte wether, let in the aire to refreshe her withall, lest betwene extreme heate and labour the woman faynt and sowne. And furthermore, she must be prouoked to sneesyng, and that eyther with the powder of Eleborus, or els of peper. Also the sydes of the woman must be stroken downewarde with the handes, which thyng helpeth greatly & furthereth. And let the Mydwyfe alwaye be very diligent, prouidyng and seing what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoyntyng the priuities with oyle, or other suche greace as I spake of before, in this fashion.

Meanes to helpe & prouoke the byrth.

The

A good mollifyng ointment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lylyes or Duches grese, & with that temper two graynes wayght of Saffron, and one grayne of Muske, and therewith annoynt the secrete partes. Yf this profite nothyng, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrrhe, Galbanum, Castorium, let those be beaten, and make lyke pylles of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylles, and put it on hoate coales, and let the woman receaue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelowe brymstone, myrrhe, Mader, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of ech lyke much, and temper al those together, making of them pylles, and with those also ye may make fume, to be receaued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer dung, or of Haukes dung, by puttyng to of Oppoponacum, is soueraigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in delyueraunce.

Also it is very good to dyp woll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conuey into the secretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia rotunda, or the roote called Bothor martis, Ciclaminus, or malum terre, or the seede of Stanisagre, any of these wrapped in woll, and conueyed inwarde, prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item take Heleborus, Oppoponacum, & wrap them together in Wooll, and minister them inwarde, for that will bryng foorth and prouoke the birth, whether it be alyue or dead. Also the

rynde

rynde and barke called Cassia lignea beaten to powder, and tempered with wine and dronken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item Asa fetida, of the bygnes and wayght of a peale, mingled together with Castorium of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wine myrt with water, and so dronken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell dronke with wine is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of Fenegreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayre, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of blewe Flouredeluce, a small quantitie tempered therwithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. And Cassia lignea and Asafetida dronke with wine, be very good for the same.

Also Holyoke sodden in cunduite water and dronken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is verye good for her to walhe her in the water in the which this Holyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylles the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell, or Cinamome, and Sauine, of eche a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a halfe, of Myrrhe, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of ech a dram, of Storax liquida halfe a dram, and of Oppium the waight of. xii. graynes, beate these altogether, & fourme them into pylles, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylles with

with two ounces of good olde wine.

Item Saffron and Syler montanum prouoketh the byrth of any lyuyng thyng, yf it be dronken: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie should greatly hurt.

Item, take .v. drammes of Sauine, of Rue or hearbe grace one dragma and a halfe, of Juniper beryes two drams, of Asa fetida, Amoniacū, Madder, of eache two drammes, of these make pylles, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in the which is sodden Sauine and Peniriall, or els with the broth of Cicercula, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauine, of Asa fetida, Amoniacum and Madder, of eache halfe a dram, these temper together in pylles, and geue her with wine one dram of the same.

Item, take of Aristolochia longa, Pepper, and Myrrhe, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wine, and make pylles of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylles be of suche efficacie and strength, that it alleuiateth and vnpayneth the byrth, it delyuereth the Matrix or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it alyue or dead.

Item, take of whyte Bedellium, Myrrhe, and Sauine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with Cassia lignea, and Hony, and make pylles of them to the bygnesse of Peason, and of these pylles geue at ech time fiue to the labouryng woman, which

whiche be of the same myght and strength, that the other pylles spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrrhe, Castorium, and Storax, of eche one dram, temper them with Hony, and make pylles of it: these for this purpose excel and passe all other, they be of such vertue and strength in operation.

A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wilde Coward, and seethe it in water, in the same water temper Myrrhe, the iuyce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thynges together, and make it plaster wyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betweene the Nauyll and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and power to prouoke birth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all suche thynges for breuitie and shortnesse, We haue set here only a certayne, whose efficacie and power shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

Howe

How the secondine or second birth shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not freely of his owne kynde.

Cap. v.

HEre also sometime it commeth to passe, that the Secondine whiche is wont to come together with the byrth, remayne and tarrye behynde, and folowe not, and that for diuers causes. One is, for because peraduenture the woman hath ben so sore weakened and feeblished with trauaile, dolour and payne of that fyrst byrth, that she hath no strength remaynyng to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the seconde byrth. Another may be, that it be entangled, tyed, or let within the matrix (whiche chaunceth many tymes) or that it be destitute of humors, so that the water be flowen from it sooner then time is, whiche shoulde make the places more slipperie and more easie to passe thorowe: Or els that the places ouer weeryed with long & sore labour, for

for payne contract or gather together, and enclose them selfe agayne, or that the places be swolne for anguishe and payne, and so let the comming foorth of the seconde byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoeuer cause it be thus stopped, the Mydwyfe in any wyse muste fynde such meanes, that it may be vnlooſed and expulsed. For otherwyse, great inconueniencie shoulde chaunce to the partie, & specially suffocation and choking of the Matrix, whiche also must so much the more be taken hede to, for because the seconde byrth retayned and kept within, wyll soone putrifie and rot, whereof wil ensue ill noysome & pestiferous vapours ascendyng to the heart, the braynes, & the midriffe, through the which meanes the woman shalbe short winded, faynte hearted, often sounding, and lying without anye maner of mouyng or styrryng in the pulces: yea, and many times is playnelye suffocated, strangled, and dead of it.

Wherefore that none of these thinges

happen, with all diligence and payne it muste be prouided that the secondine be expelled.

Retention of flowres for weakenesse.

Yf retention of it come by Weakenesse of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be reconforted & strengthed with good comfortable meates and drinkes which may enheart her, as broath made of the yolcke of Egges, or with good olde Wine, and good fat and tidie flesshe, or Byrdes, Hennes flesh, Capons, Partrige, Pigins and such lyke.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contract together agayne, eyther els that the Matrix is swollen for long paine, then must be vsed suche thinges to prouoke it out, the whiche do make the way slipper, sople, & easie for it to proceede, with the oyles or ointmentes spoken of before, as oyle of whyte Lillies, of Maiorum, and of blewe Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or Galbanū beaten to powder and dronke with luke warmed wine, wyll cause the same to

issue

issue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Penirial sodden in wyne, and the decoction dronken, is of the same vertue.

Item to suffume the secretes with the perfumes written of before, is good for this purpose, and the vapour of the water in whiche Mallowes, Holyoke, and Berefoote be sodden, receaued beneath, is lyke good.

Also to washe that partes in water in whiche is sodden branne, or to holde a litle bagge full of sodden branne to the place, and therewithall to soke the place, is very profitable.

But yf the retention of the secondine come by reason that it is entangled or fastened in some place of the matrix, so that it wyll not resolue ne loose, then make a fume vnderneath of brimstone, Iuie leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cresses and Fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and sweete smelling thinges, as Ambre, Muske, Frankencense, Gallia Muscata, and confec-

tion neare, the which sauoures and perfumes put on the embers, muste be so closely receiued vnderneth, that no part of the smell do ascende to the nose of the woman. For to the nose shoulde the sauoure of nothing come, but only of such thinges, the which stinke, or haue abhominable smel, as Asa fetita, Castoriū, mans hayre or womans hayre burnt, Pecockes fethers burnt. Item, in this case it shalbe very good to make a perfume vnderneth, of the houe of an asse, which thinges although they be of yll sauour, yet they be of suche nature and efficacie, that they occasionate not onlye the secondine, but also dead byrthes to proceede and come forth out of the Matrix.

And in this case also let the woman holde her breath inwarde so muche as she can, for that shall dryue downward suche thynges as be in the body to be expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese with the pouder of Elebozus or Pepper put in the nose, holding her mouth and nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called Vnguentum Basilicon conueyed into ỹ matrix, is very good, for it mollifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the which so sone as it is expelled, infude the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item Rose water tempered with a quantitie of the pouder of Holyoke, and dronke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any parte of the secondine do appeare, let the Mydwyfe receaue it tenderlye, loosing it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and if ye doubte that it wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the which she hath handfast, to the womans legge or foote, not very strayght lest it breake, neyther very laxe lest it slip in agayne, and then cause her to sneese. Nowe yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quicklye forwarde, then loose it a litle and a litle very tenderly, wreathing it from one side to another, tyll such tyme

as it be gotten out, but euer beware of violent and hasty mouing of it, lest that with the seconde byrth ye remoue the Matrix also.

And yf in this meane whyle the woman faynt or sowne by reason of greate payne ensuyng of the takyng awaye of this secondine, then must ye minister such thinges to her the which comforte the head & the heart, as be electuaries which are confict with Muske, Ambre, and the confection of precious stones, as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also suche thinges the whiche comfort the stomacke, as Diagalanga, Dia cinamomum, & such lyke, whiche are alwaye in a redynesse at the Apothecaries, the whiche also she shall receaue with wine.

Item to remoue the secondine, & to expel it, take Rue, Horehounde, Sothernwood, and Motherwurte, of eche lyke quantitie, and then take so much of the oyle of Lylyes, as may be sufficient to stepe, moysten, and soke the foresayde herbes

hearbes in, put all this together into a glased potte, couered with suche a couer that it haue a litle hole or vente aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer the fyre of coales, so that it boyle a litle whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole where the woman sytteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the whiche the one ende ye shall put into the vente or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receaue into her body, and so to sit closed rounde about with clothes, that no vapour or ayre go forth of the potte, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it to kepe it hotte: and thus sytte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the secondine moue or begyn to proceade of his owne kynde.

And yf it be so that ye profite not this wayes, yet then laye this plaster on the bellye betweene the nauyll and the secretes, of the which we shal speake

hereafter, the which is of suche operation and efficacie, that it expelleth dead birthes. If for al this ỹ secondine come not forwarde, then leaue it, and vse no more medicines ne remedies to that purpose, but let it alone, for within few dayes it wyll putrifie and corrupt, and dissolue vnto a watery substance, thicke lyke bryne or other fer mixed with water, and so issue foorth. Howbeit, in the meane whyle it wyll put the woman to great paine in the head, in the heart, & in the stomacke, as we touched before.

¶ Howe that many thinges chaunce to the women after their labour, and howe to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi.

IT is also to be vnderstanded that many times after the deliueraunce, happeneth to women other ỹ feuer or ague, or swelling, or inflation of the body, other tumblyng in the belly, or els commotion or settelyng out of order of the Mother

ther or Matrix. Cause of the whiche thinges, is sometimes lacke of due and sufficient purgation and clensing of the flowres after the birth, or els contrarywyse overmuch flowyng of the same, which sore doth weaken the woman. Also the great labour and styrring of the Matrix in the byrth.

Then as oft as it commeth for lacke of due purgation of the flowres, there muste be ministred suche thynges the which may prouoke the same, whether it be by medicines taken at the mouth, or by lotion and washing of the feete, or by fumes, or odour, or emplastration, or by decoction of herbes seruing to that purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such other thinges, accordyng as the person or the perill doth require, of the whiche thinges fewe or no women be ignorant. And ye must take diligent hede that she be exactly and vtterly purged, to this be agreable all suche simples the whiche prouoke vrine, and open the vaynes, makyng free way for the blood to passe and

and sende the humours and matter downward, as Motherwurt, Asarum, Sauine, Peniriall, Parcely, Charuyll, Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper berries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder, Valeriam, Tyme, Cinamome, Spikenarde, and such other. Al those thinges as they do prouoke and cause brine, so do they also prouoke & cause the flowers to depart. Howbeit, as neare as ye can, vse none of these thinges without the counsayle of an experte Phisition, lest whyleste ye helpe one place, ye hurt another. Also to sneese, helpeth muche to this matter, & to holde in the breath, enclosing the nose and the mouth. Also fumigation made of the eyes of salte fyshes, or of the houe of a horse vnderneath, prouoketh the flowres. If ye profite not by this meanes, then being able to beare it, let her blood in the vaine called Saphina, vnder the ancles of the feete, for this prouoketh flowres cheefely of all other thynges.

Lykewyse do, yf the woman haue the ague

ague after her labour, for that cõmeth of like cause by retention of the flowres, and in the feuer let her vse to drinke Water, in the which is decocte Barley beaten, or Cicer and barley together, or water in whiche be sodden Tamarindi, or whay of mylke, and let her eate a cullis made of a Cocke, and sweete Pomegranates, for these thinges do prouoke the flowres, and mittigateth the immoderate heate, refreshing greatly the body, loossyng and opening suche thinges the whiche before were constricte and cludered together. For the ague in women with chylde.

If the body after labour do swell and inflate, then let her drinke water, in the which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, beaten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuarie called Diaciminum, or of ỹ Trochiskes of Alkechengie, otherwyse called Halicacabus.

Also in this case a clyster made of suche thynges the which do banquishe and expell ventosities and wyndynesse, as Annis seede, Fenell seede, Rue the hearbe and the seede, Bay berries, Cum-

cummin. &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for that part of Aristolochia Rotunda, Squinantum, Storax Liquida, Dorenicum, Zeduaria.

Agayne, yf the woman after her labour haue frettyng and gnawyng of the guttes and payne of the Matrix, and other secrete partes there about, then let her vse the vapour and fume of suche thinges the whiche haue vertue to mittigate, swage, and alay the payne, as Mallowes, Holyoke, Fenegreke, Comin, Camomell, and Sauine. Of these also make emplasters and bagges, the whiche may be applied to the payned places.

Also to annoynt ỹ places with Oleum sesaminũ (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Almondes. And yf no greate heate do abounde in the woman, she maye drinke Triacle, or Trifera magna, with wine in whiche is decoct Motherwort or Muggewort.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take Peniriall, Policaria, fire leaues of baye tree, seeth them together, and receaue the vapour vnderneth closely.

Item, take Rue, red Motherwort, Sothernwood, beate them together, and temper them with the oyle of Peniriall, and put all together into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a whyle tyll it be somewhat sodden together, and then take it of agayne, & put it into a litle rounde lynnen bagge made for the purpose, the whiche with these hearbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomel and Lyne, of eche lyke much

muche.iiii.handfulles, bray them together,and ſeethe them with white wine, and then put it in a rounde bag of linnen, as before was done, and conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item,let her drinke for the ſame purpoſe, two graynes of muſke with wine.

Item, take whyte Onions,and couer them vnder the hote aſhes, the whiche when they be well roſted, beate them together with freſhe Butter vnſalted,and make it in maner of a plaſter, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places, as before: in the meane whyle perfumyng the priuie partes with whyte Frankencence and Storax.

If it be ſo that the woman be vered about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Muggewort, of eche two handfulles, of Wormewood, Sothernwood, of eche one handfull, or Motherwort three handfulles, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten ſmall halfe an ounce, decoct all theſe thinges together,and in the water of this decoction beyng warme, dyp a ſpounge or other lynnen clothes, fomentyng, ſokyng, and ſtrekyng the backe with the ſame, and ſo do oftentymes, or els put all theſe forſayde herbes together ſodden in a bagge,and lay it plaſter wyſe to the backe.

If this profite not,take oyle Nardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the whiche put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to ſmall pouder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anete, oyle of Camomell,

of

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lillies two ounces, of Ware two drams, dissolue all these together ouer the fyre, and therewith annoynt the backe.

What remedies whē the flowres issue more aboundantlye then nedeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres issue more vehemently, and in greater aboundaunce then they shoulde, to the great effeoblyshing of the woman, and inducing of much langour and paynefulnes, then fyrst shal ye note Wherevpon it commeth: for the cause knowen, the disease may the more redyly be recured, and causes of it be diuers, but moste especiall those that folowe, that is to say: Of much aboundaunt superfluous blood contayned in the whole body, or of much commixtion of the colericke humour and the blood together, by the whiche the blood is enfired and chauffed, and so distendeth, openeth, and setteth abroade the vaynes whiche descende to the Matrix.

Also the blood beyng very thyn and wateryshe, for so it penetrateth, thrilleth, and issueth forth the sooner. Also yf the vaynes be very large, and receiue much blood,

blood, for in that case they sende forth the more agayne. And yf the Matrix be vnmightie and weakened, the vaynes lykewyse are weake and large, so that they can not retayne nor withhold the blood.

Also if the body of the woman, or the outwarde partes be very dence, close, & compact together, so that the outward pores be contract and shutte, in suche wyse that no vapours or swet can issue out at them, then this shall cause the yll humours (whiche otherwyse woulde passe through the pores in swet) to remayne within the bodye, and there to engender and encrease great flure and aboundaunce of matter, whiche proceedeth with the flowres, and augmenteth the quantitie of them.

Also yf the vaynes of the Matrix be (by some chaunce) open and flow forth, as yf the Matrix be perished or otherwyse viciate: Or yf it chaunce that the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath ben thruste, or beaten, by all and any

of

of this meanes may come this inordinate flure of flowres.

Good counsell to the woman.

Nowe seyng then that it ensueth by so manyfolde occasions and causes, it shalbe mete that women in this case be nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose their minde vnto expert Phisitians, shewing them euery thyng in it, as they knowe wherevpon it shoulde come, so that the Phisition vnderstandyng the womans mynde, may the sooner by his learnyng and experience consyder the true cause of it, and the very remedye to amende it. And many thinges there be which ceasse and restrayne this ouermuch flowyng of flowres, both Electuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pouders, Clysters, Odours, Suffumigations, Bathes, Plasters, and Oyntmentes, of whiche for the loue of women I wyl here set forth the most principall and best.

Fyrst then to stinte and restrayne the outragious flure of flowres, it shalbe very good to binde the armes strayght and strongly, and not the feete or handes, as some vnwyse men do teache

teache, and then to sette a ventose boxe, or cuppyng glasse with fyre (which is called boxyng) vnder the breastes, without any scarification, layeng also lynnen clothes dypped in vineger on the belly betweene the Mauyll and the secretes, conueying also into the places suche thynges whiche haue vertue to restrayne blood, as the flowre and rynde of Pomegranate, Ambre, Terra Sigillata, Bole Armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis, Hematites, the red Rose, whyte Frankencense, & galles, all those thyngs, or as many of them as ye can conueniently get, beate them to powder in lyke portion, and temper them with redde wine, makyng of it a plaster, the whiche so tempered, put into a lytle rounde bagge, the quantitie of a mans thumbe, the whiche she shall put into the priuie partes.

¶ Item another plaster, to be ministred lykewyse.

Take of the blood stone called Emathites, Bole Armeniack, of ech halfe an ounce, Sanguis draconis, Licium, of eche two drams, Karabe, otherwise named Ambre, the cuppes of Acornes, Cipres tree Nuttes, flowres of Pomegranade, of eche one dram, of the scales of Iron one dramme and a halfe, Turpentine and Pitche lyke quantitie, or so muche as shalbe sufficient to make a softe and somewhat liquid plaster, beate and braye all these together, temperyng it to a plaster, and then do with it, as ye dyd with the other before.

¶ An oyntment for the same purpose.

¶ Take oyle Martine, oyle of Roses, of eche foure ounces, Karabe, the scrapyng of Iuery, the

scrapyng of a goates horne, redde Coral, Terra sigillata, whyte Frankencense, of eche (beyng well and fynely beaten) two drams, of whyte mare two ounces: all those tempered together, make them in an oyntment, and there with annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bath concernyng the same.

Take Wormewood, Plantane the more and the lesse, the toppes of Vines, freshe braunches of wylde Mulberies, or of the bramble, vnrype Damassons, Sloes, or Bolasse, wylde Peares, Medlers or Hispylles, of eche three handfulles, of red rose leaues two handfulles, of Dasies, of all sortes of Thystles, of eche two handfulles, of Cinckfoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne cuppes a sawcer full, of Gaules, of Acornes pylled, of Bursa pastoris, of eche two handfulles, beate all these to powder, cuttyng and brusyng that that will not be beaten to powder, and seethe them together in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water vp to the Nauyll, and when she commeth forth of the bath, geue her to drynke two drammes of Electuarium Athanasie, or Miclete, with Plantane water, or yf she be sore thirstie, with red wyne.

And lykewyse ye maye geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde roose Suger two ounces, of red Coral, burnt Iuery, Bole Armeniacke, of eche two drams, of Hematites

tites three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the roose Suger, and let her receaue of it in the Mornyng and Euenyng, at eche time one dramme, with.vi. spoonefulles of Plantane water, or els the water of Bursa pastoris.

Item, take of the stone Emathites, and rub it on a Barbers Whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seeme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentymes, vntyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery Mornyng let the woman drynke. iii. iiii. or.v. spoonefulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of Carabe, or Ambre, and the Trochiskes of Bole armeniacke, whiche must be ministred a dramme or more of eyther of them, with.iiii.or.v.spoonefulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsayle of the Phisitions.

Nowe yf it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clensed, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of Night-

shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those thynges be tempered together and the places annoynted therewith.

Item otherwyse. Take the white of an egge, womans mylke, the iuyce of Purslane, and temper al these together, and conuey it to the diseased place. These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the rest, howe to open, drie, and cleanse such Apostumations, ye must consult with some Phisition or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth foorth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this busines, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: wherfore in this case it is the Mydwyfes parte, with her hande warmed and wet in whyte wyne, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the which yf she can not by this meanes, for because peraduenture it be swollē, then

let

let her dissolue butter in whyte wyne warmed, and therein dip woll, with the which wrappe the same gutte a whyle, so doyng often tymes tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in agayne. And ye may vse in the steade of whyte wine, luke warme milke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: Take ware, and melt it together with Mastiche or whyte Frankencense: then spreade it vpon lynnen plaster wyse, and laye it ouer the place where it came foorth, byndyng it to with a lynnen cloth or roller, for partyng of. And let this be done thus so often as she goeth to stoole, after that she hath done, vntyll such tyme that it be so setled within, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupie ware, then dyppe woll in the oyle of Mastycke, or of Spyke Nardy, and laye it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. Washe and soke the gut with the water in whiche is decocte and sodden such thynges which cricate, drye, and constrayne or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuttes, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Mastiche, Franckencense, Sanguis draconis: and when it is wel washed and soked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it agayne

into his place.

Agayne, sometyme it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour the Matrix is remoued out of his place, and appeareth foorth: Then let it be washed and soked with the water in whiche be sodden these thynges folowyng.

Take of Cipres nuts, Spyke narde, Balaustium, Acorne cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Medlyles, and vnrype wylde Peares, and vnrype Apples, Plummes, and Damsons or Bollase, of eche a handefull. And suche of those as be to be powdred, beate them to powder, and the rest diuide and cut them small, then seeth them all together in rayne water, or els in water in the whiche steele beyng redde hotte, hath ben oftentymes quenched, and in the same water let the partie bathe her vp to the Nauyll: or els dyppe a spunge or a locke of woll in it, and therewith washe and soke the same Matrix oftentymes. Then euer with a fayre cleane lynnen cloth wype it cleane agayne, and strewe vpon it the powder folowyng, beaten very small, and searsed through sylke.

Take of Frankencense, Carabe, Galles, Balaustium, Cipres nuttes, Alome, Antimoni, Bole Armeniacke, Mastiche, of eche lyke muche, beate all these to verye fyne powder, and strewe the Matrix with it, then tenderly reduce it into his place agayne with warme lynnen clothes, byndyng it vp.

by. But yf so be that the Matrix be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyll not be restored to his naturall place agayne, then dissolue butter in white wine, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Remedies for the womans nauil, when it openeth it selfe for payne in the labour.

Agayne, sometyme it chaunceth that the womans Nauyll through labour is dissolued, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tent of fine lynnen, and annoynt it with this oyntment that followeth, & the same put into the Nauyll.

Take whyte Frankencense, and beate it to powder, and then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid honye, with this annoynt the Nauyll within and without, annoyntyng also the tente, the which being put in the hole of the Nauyl, binde some cloth ouer it to kepe it in his place.

Howe that sometime the priuie part & fundement become one.

Item, many tymes it chaunceth that thorow the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priuie part and the fundement become one, by reason of rupture and breakyng of the same parte in the delyueraunce of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matrix descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thyng chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

the same place is very narowe, and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceedeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this mishappe falleth, fyrste washe and soke the Matrix, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before: then heale this bracke & wounde by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threede, as Chirurgions do other woundes, and if that lyke ye not, then may ye cure it otherwyse without sowyng, thus.

Take two lyttle peeces of lynnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fyngers broade, spreade the lytle clothes with some fast cleauyng plaster, the which wyll cause the cloutes to stycke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one syde of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothyng appeare betweene the peeces of lynnen in the myddes of them, but only the clyfte and ryfte of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sydes of the lynnen together close, as before I byd you to sowe the shyn, and when they be thus stytched together, lay a lytle

lytle liquid pitche or tarre vpon the seame. And this done, the lappes and sydes of the wounde vnder the lynnen plaster wyll growe together agayne and heale, and then may ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dryed, and beate it to powder, also a lytle quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strow of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of abortementes, or vntymely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen and eased. Cap. vii.

ABortement, or vntymelye birth, is when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be rype (as in the.iii. iiii. or v. moneth) before the byrth haue lyfe: and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is delyuered before it stirre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the whiche thynges there be many and diuers causes. Many causes of vntymely byrthes.

Fyrst, sometymes the mouth of the Matrix

Matrix is so large and ample, that it can not conueniently close it selfe together, neither conteine the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted & infected with viscous, slymye, fleumatycke, and other watery she humours, that the cauitie or holownesse thereof is thereby made so slypperye, that the feature conceaued can not there remayne, but slyppeth and slydeth foorth agayne. Also sometymes the Matrix is apostumated and sore, so that for payne it can not contayne the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotilidons, that is the vaynes by the which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrix (thorowe the which also the feature receaueth nourishment and foode, as is declared in the fyrst booke) be stopped with viscous & yll humours, or els swollen by inflation, so that they breake, by the whiche meanes, the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perysheth and dyeth, & that most commonly in the second and thirde moneth after.

after conception. Wherfore Hipocrates sayth: All such women whiche be impregnate or conceaued, being of a meane state in theyr body (that is to say, nether to fatte or grosse, ne to spare or leane) yf it chaunce any suche to aborte in the seconde or thirde moneth (no other euident cause appearyng) knowe ye for certaine, that it ensueth for because the Cotilidons be opplete, stopped and stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therewith that they breake: and so consequentlye the feature dyeth for fault of foode.

Item, aborcement sometyme commeth by reason that some of the places about the Matrix be diseased and greeued, as yf Intestinum rectum, Whiche is called the fundement gut, be vlcerate, hauyng the pyles or Hemorroides, or the bisick or bladder be swollen or encũbred with the stone, the strangury, or other euil. In these cases through the great labour & paine the which the partie hath in endeuoring & enforcing her self other to

Aborcemẽt by reason of some greefe about the Matrix.

to stoole, or to make water, be engendred great motions downeward, wherby manye tymes the handfastnes of the Cotilidons is broken.

Aborcemēt by Tenasmus.

Also aborcement maye come of a disease called Tenasmus, the which is when one hath euer great desyre and luste to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, neuertheleſſe the parties greatlye do enforce and payne them selfe to it. And as Hipocrates saith, the pregnaunt woman which hath Tenasmus, for the most parte abhorceth, that is to say, bringeth foorth her chylde out of tyme.

Aborcemēt through the cough.

Item the cough, if it be greeuous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent Phisition sayth, suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, euermore lyghtly do aborce, for because that all the meate and foode the whiche they receaue, turneth to foode, nourishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes, and so is the conception destitute of foode, wherfore necessarylye it dyeth.

Item

Item, this chaunce also commeth by ouermuch bleedyng at the nose, or other where, or issuyng of the flowres immoderately. And so sayth Hypocrates, yf the woman yeeld flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature do long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstande, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and verye spare, or yf it be after the thyrd moneth, for it may be well, that in the fyrst and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet lytle foode and norysshment satisfieth the conception for the smalenesse thereof.

Item, to be let blood may be the cause of abortement, whiche must be vnderstande, in suche as haue but lytle store of blood: but such as haue great copie and plentie of blood, may without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let blood, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I would that none should be let blood, except some great and wayghtie cause

dyd

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by taking of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth, and after the seuenth moneth.

And yf it be so that any necessitie do so require that she must needes receaue a purgation, let it be done betweene the fourth and the seuenth moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easie.

Also this may come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blooddye or otherwyse, and specially yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and perysshed. Also ouermuch vometyng may be cause of abortement, for by ouermuch galpyng and reachyng bywardes, the Cotilidons may be broken, and so the feature to perysshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger and also sharpe and feruent sycknesse may be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodayne palsie,

palsye, the fallyng sycknesse. &c. Also ouermuch dronkennes, and exceſſe feedyng and surfettyng, by the whiche the byrth is suffocate and strangled in the belly, and the foode corrupt for lacke of due digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any outwarde or inwarde cause, or yf the Secondine in the which the feature is conteyned, do breake before his tyme, and the humours and waters of the same flow & issue forth, causing the place to be slyppery, and so the birth to slyde away vntimely: Or yf the mother haue taken very great cold, or ouer great heat, whiche weakeneth both mother and chyld.

And therefore ought Women with chylde to eschewe much bathing or going to the hot houses in theyr teemyng, for that may do hurt three wayes.

Fyrste, that it kyndleth or enflameth the ayre or breath conteyned in the body, and so styrreth the chylde, and sometyme the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, & looseth

looseth the Cotilidons, and so maketh the byrth to issue foorth. Thirdly, that the vtter heate of the bath, encreaseth the inwarde heate of the body: In so much, that the byrth not beyng able to sustayne and abyde the heate, naturally proceedeth for refrigeration and coolyng: but in the tyme or about the tyme of labour, she may vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite delyueraunce.

Cause of aborcement by mutation of the weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, may be cause of aborcement. For (as Hypocrates writeth) whensoeuer the wynter is hot and moyste, and the sprynge tyde after colde & drye, such women in that sprynge tyde may soone & of a lyght cause haue aborcement: Or yf they aborte not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great payne, and the birth shalbe very weake & sickelye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by and by, it shal proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thyng is this.

For

For when that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hoate and moyste weather heateth & moysteth the womans body, & by that the bodye is opened, vnlooſed, & reſolued, no leſſe then though ſhe were euery day bathed, and vppon this when the ſpryng time commeth, yf it be colde and dryye, fyndyng the body open and vnlooſed after ſuche ſorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the ſooner & the more behemently: and the byrth feeling the ſodayne colde and chaunge of weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered: or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne ſhall it be to kepe life in it.

Item, abortement may happen by ouer muche ſtyrring of the body in labouryng, daunſyng, or leaping, or by ſome fall or thruſt agaynſt ſome wall, or beatyng, or by ſome ſodain anger, feare, dread, ſorowe, or ſome ſodayne and vnlookedfor ioy. Thus haue I rehearſed all the cauſes of the whiche moſte com-

monly maye ensue abortement or vntymely byrth, the whiche no doubte is much more griefe and payne to the woman, then the very naturall labour, for such thinges as chaunce to man or woman contrarye to nature, or before nature doeth require it, is farre greater greefe, then the same happenyng and comming in his due season.

¶ Signes whereby ye may foresee abortement.

Tokens to foresee abortement.

When the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to go before. First her brests which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to ware lesse, to fall, and to flagge, and then euer for the most part abortement foloweth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, whiche before was in good lyking, the other remaynyng sounde and safe, then loke of what side the brest is of, and the chylde of that syde is in perill. Wherefore Hipocrates wryteth, yf the ryght brest slake or flagge, the masculine or male

male byrth is in perill: yf the left, the female byrth, because that for the moste part when there be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other feminine: the man lyeth in the ryght syde, and the woman in the left most commonly.

Also another signe of aborcement is, when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, & that she begyn to ware red in the face, and all partes of the bodye to shake & tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palsey in the head. Item when she feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braines, the rest of the body taken as it were with a werynes without any outward apparant cause, why these thinges portende and signifie aborcement to be at hande, specially yf at the same time the flowres issue also.

Item, yf the womans body do swell and inflate with a certayne hardenesse or stysenesse, and that she feele stitches, and as it were ventositie or wynde, runnyng from one syde of the bodye

to the other, and yet the belly not withstandyng, beyng nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do persist and continue a=nye whyle, the woman taking and eatyng suche thinges whiche haue vertue to discusse and vanquishe ventositie and wyndynesse: this thynge I saye doeth betoken perill of aborcement throughe ventositie and inflation, and that chiefely about the thirde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be prouided and foreseene the aborcement before it come. Nowe wyl I shew you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies whereby to auoyde aborcement.

The cheefe remedie to auoide aborcement is, to shun all such thinges which may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of already: but yf ye feare aborcement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,

large, then must ye vse suche thynges whose operation is to contrahe, constrayne, and bring together, as Bathes, Fumigations, Oyntmentes, Plasters, Odours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken before, and such thinges the which represse and stynte the flowers flowyng ouer muche after the byrth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slipperie, other because that the cotilidons be replete and fulfylled with viscous humours, and with inflations or ventolities: then may ye defende it by vsing of suche thinges whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to represse ventolities, whereof also we haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not to make some expert Phisition of your counsayle, yf ye may haue such one, for because that many suche thinges come, and not all by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubte peryll for because

that the Matrix or other places about be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate, or hauyng the stone or strangury, and suche other thynges: then aske and vse the aduise of some well learned medicine, and he shall shewe you howe all thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare aborcement because the partie is very weake and low brought, then let her feede on such thinges the whiche moysten and nourysshe wel, or fatten ỹ body, as Capons flesshe, Kid, Lamme, young Veale, Partrige, and such other.

Agayne, yf the woman be taken with any sharpe and fell disease, then let her be cured of the same as shortlye as can be, with such thinges the which appertayne to the curyng of such disease: or yf she haue susteyned any long famine or hunger, then let her be fedde with good meates and drinkes moderately taken: and yf she haue surfetted by ouermuch eatynge and drynkyng (as nowe adayes most commonly people do) then let

let her abstayne for a tyme, and if it may be conuenientlye done, let her receaue some easy and gentle medicine, Whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfetting burthen, especially by vomittyng, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of water luke warme, wherin hath ben sodden two sponefuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, with her fynger or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in blood, then shall it be very good a litle to let her blood, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thorowe ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangeled: of the whiche thing also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare abortement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbreakyng, or the flure, or of ꝑ disease called Tenasmus, or of ouermuche issuyng

of blood, whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduise of a Phisition for remedie, yf for the fragilitie, tenderneſſe, and breacke of the secondine, she feare this aborcement, for because that in this case the secondine shall not be able to holde and contayne the byrth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that she hurt not her selfe by ouermuch mouing or stirryng, as by labouryng, daunsing, runnyng, standyng, faste goyng, or carrying of ponderous and waighty thinges, or lyftyng of the same. And to be short, let her with all warynesse take heede and be diligent that she eschewe and abstayne from all suche thynges the whiche myght cause and induce aborcement.

Of dead birthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, and by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. xi.

It

IT shalbe nowe conuenient for vs to speake of dead birthes, howe it shalbe knowen that they be dead, and howe they may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to knowe whether the childe be dead in the mothers wombe.

¶ Signes then that the byrth is dead in the mothers wombe, be these.

i. Fyrst, yf the mothers brestes do sodenly slake, as I touched before.

ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng wont before to styrre.

iij. If when the mother turneth her from the one side to ỹ other, she feele it falling from thone side to the other like a stone or a dead wayght.

iiij. If her belly and nauyll begyn to ware colde, which before was wont to be temperately hotte.

v. If any stynkyng and fylthye humours flowe from the Matrix, and cheefely after some fell disease.

vi. If the womans eyes ware holow, & that her colour chaunge from whyte to swart and dunne colour, and that her eyes and nose ware astonyed, and haue

haue not their ryght vse, and her lippes ware wanne.

vii. If beneath the Nauell and about the secrete partes she feele great thong & payne, the colour of her face chaungeyng into worse and worse, otherwyse then it was wont to do.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche thinges whiche be agaynst nature, and not wont to be eaten or dronken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with payne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye with the strangurye, or that she enforce her selfe much to the stoole, and with al her power, and yet can not do any thing.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the whiche thing lightly happeneth two or three dayes after the birth be dead.

xii. If her handes put into very warme water, and then layde on the womans belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe that it is dead.

Of all these signes nowe, the more that come together of them at one time

tyme and in one person, the surer may ye be that the birth is dead, the whiche beyng once dead, all diligence muste be hadde that it may be expelled out of the womans body.

But here must ye see agayne whether it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe saued or no: for sometime it chaunceth that the Mother dyeth withall, and sometimes the Mother doth well and prospereth.

To knowe whether the mother shal be in perill or no.

whether the Mother shalbe in perill withall, or no, by these thinges shall ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the labour sowne or feare, as though she were in a traunce: if her remembraunce fayle her, and she waxe feeble and scant able to moue or stirre her selfe: yf she (called with a loude voyce) can aunswere nothyng at all, or els veryelitle, and that very softly, as though her voyce began to fayle her: if she be inuaded or taken among in the labouryng with conuulsion or shrynkelyng together: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:

yf

yf her pulces beate very fast, the which signes when ye see in ỹ woman labouryng, it is an euident token that she shal not lyue long after her deliueraunce, wherfore commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but yf none of these signes do appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shall do wel, the byrth beyng once departed: wherefore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be deliuered of this dead burthen, the whiche thyng maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medicines expulsiue, or els by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two meanes to expel dead birthes

Fyrste without instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Asse, and put it on coles, and let the woman receaue the fume vnderneath.

¶ Another.

Take the shinne of an Adder, Myrre, Castoriū, Brymstone, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, Madder that the Diers occupie, Pigeōs donge, or Hawkes donge, beate al these to powder, & temper thē with Dre gal, & make pylles of it, eche the quantitie of a fylberde nutte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receaue the fume thorowe a pipe or conduite made for that purpose into the priuities.

Another. Take Encense, Oppoponacum, Galbanum, Brimstone, of eche lyke muche, beate them together, and temper them with Ore gall, and make pilles of them, and then of the same make fumigations, as before.

A potion for the same purpose. Take Asa fetida, halfe a dram, of Rue three drams, of Myrre two drams, and beate them to pouder, and geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder with white wine, or with water in the whiche Sauine is sodden.

Another. Take Figges, Fenegreke, Organnie, and seethe them in water, the whiche geue vnto the woman to drinke: for this drynke wyll engender lubricitie and slippernes in the neather partes, and vse also some of those thinges which haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we entreated before.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries concernyng the same. Take Gumme, Ammoniacke, Oppoponacum, Heliborus niger, Staphisager, Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthis without his kernels, beate all these thinges together, tempering them with Ore gall, and also with the iuice of fresh Rue, then make a pessarie of wollen, and annoynt and wete the pessarie with the same, conuaying it into the secrete places.

Item another. Make a pessarie of wollen, of the length and thicknesse of a finger, and dippe it

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolued a quantitie of Scammonie, and do with that pessarie, as before.

Item, take Aristolochia rotunda, Sauine, garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Ore gall, with this annoynt a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drynke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe two drams, and geue the same to drynke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shall ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shall expell the dead byrth without anye peryll of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrrhe foure drammes, of Cinamome, Galbanum, Castorium, of eche two drams, of Oppopocacum, one dramme, all those beaten & tempered together with Ore gal, make pilles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the neather partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought foorth, inflation and suffocation of blood is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sotherenwood. Mugwurt, of eche a handful, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomell, Horehounde, Fenegreke, of eche two ounces, seethe all these thinges together in rain

raine water, in the whiche let the woman bathe her selfe: then take of Hennes greace and Duckes greace, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche ad two ounces of oyle of Dyll seede, with this oyntment anoynt the womans head comming out of the bathe, then take Date stones, and beate them to powder a dramme and an halfe, with a scruple of Saffron tempered together with white wine, the whiche let her immediately drinke after she come forth of the bathe.

Item, take Oppoponacum, and make thereof a pessarye the quantitie of a fynger, conuaye it into the priuities, this expelleth the deadde byrth.

Item, take of Galbanum a dram or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the Galbanum being dissolued, geue it to the woman to drynke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take Galbanum, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Motherwurt, and of this make a plaster by putting to of ware a certayne quantitie: then take a linnen cloth of suche length and breadth that it may couer all the belly vnder the Nauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this clothe spreade this plaster of the thicknesse of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called Diatessaron, & geue of it to the woman for to drinke, and it wyll expell the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profite not, then must

muste be vsed more seuere and harde remedyes with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and such other thynges made for the nonce. And fyrst the woman muste be layde a long vpryght, the middle part of her bodye lying hier then all the rest, companyed of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to kepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she ryse not withall. Then let the Mydwyfe annoynt her lefte hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other that maye make it soople and smothe, and holding out her fingers shutting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix to feele and perceaue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hookes, and suche other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

Yf so be that it lye the head forwarde, then fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, or the roofe of the mouth, or vnder the chin, or on one of the shoulders, which of these partes shall seeme moste commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderlye for hurtyng of the woman.

But yf it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priuie partes, or by some ribbe, or some of the backe bones, or of the brest bones: and when this hooke is thus fastened, the Mydwyfe may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte hande

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other parte of the byrth, ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her drawe both together, so that the byrth may proceede and come foorth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the commyng foorth with the forefynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to sticke, or to be lette any where: and as it commeth foorth, alwaye to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes onely of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bpwarde agayne, by reason of the narownesse of the place, then bynde it with a lynnen cloth that it slyp not bp agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde bntyll such tyme that the whole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cutte it of from the body, and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrst at once, or one legge, or both, yf they can not be returned backe to be otherwyse taken out conueniently e. As ye cutte the armes from the shoulders, so lykewyse cuttynge the legges from the thyghes, for the whiche purpose the Chyrurgions haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which suche legges and armes may soone be cut frō the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cutte from the bodye, then turne the rest, so that it maye easylye proceede with as lytle payne to the mother as

may be.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swellyng, or resort of humours, that it wyll not conueniently issue out at that narowe places: Then let the Mydwyfe with a sharpe penknyfe cutte open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne foorth, and so the head to waxe lesse, able to be plucked out: But yf it be so, that not by anye suche casualtie the head be bygge, but onlye of a naturall growth, then muste the head be broken in peeces, and the partes euermore taken foorth with suche instrumentes as the Chirurgions haue redy and necessarye for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come foorth, yet the breast part woulde not folowe for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lykewyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had foorth. And euen so lykewyse yf all the resse of the body shoulde be so swollen that it woulde not proceede ne come foorth: then muste it lykewyse be broken in peeces, and so had foorth.

Farthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be exulcerate or appostumate, so that the passage be made the narower by that meanes, the dryer, and the more contract: then must ye fyrst studye and endeuour you to soople and ease the places by oyles and other greaces, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also

Alſo yf the dead byrth come ſydelong, then muſt ye do what maye be done to conuerte and turne it to ſuche faſhion, that it may moſte eaſylye be brought foorth. The Matrix and other ſecretes muſt be annoynted, perfumed, and vapoured with ſuch thinges the which may make it more ample and large. If it can not be thus had foorth whole, then let it be cutte out by peece meale, as is before ſpoken of. And yf after this delyueraunce the flowres iſſue ouer behementlye, then vſe ſuche thinges as haue vertue to reſtrayne them, of the whiche I haue ſpoken in the.vi. Chapter before.

But contrarye to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chylde hauyng lyfe in it: then ſhall it be meete to kepe open the womans mouth, and alſo the neather places, ſo that the chylde may by that meanes both receaue and alſo expell ayre and breath, whiche otherwyſe myght be ſtopped, to the deſtruction of the chylde. And then to turne her on the lefte ſyde, and there to cut her open, and ſo take out the chylde. They that be borne after this faſhion are called Ceſars, for becauſe they be cutte out of theyr mothers belly: Whereupon alſo the noble Romayne Ceſar the fyrſte toke his name.

¶ In the last Chapter of this booke be breefely recited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the cheefe purpose entended in this present booke. Cap. r.

FOrsomuche as the principall entent and ende of this booke is, to shewe the meanes and medicines whereby the womans labour may be made the more easie: therefore here I wyll compendiously set foorth certayne medicines, oyntmentes, and emplasters, suche as shalbe sufficient and moste requisite to that purpose, and suche agayne as hath ben well experimented and practised: The whiche also it shalbe conuenient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in a redynesse agaynst theyr tyme of neede. For although that nature be the cheefe and head doer in all this busynesse, (as in conception, bearyng, and the byrth:) yet notwithstandyng, medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and fortifie nature, beyng sometyme impedite and lette, yea, impotent and not able to do her office as shoulde appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour is come, yf she labour long and paynefully, and yet the byrth do not proceede: then for the more expedite and quicke delyueraunce, geue her of this medicine folowyng.

¶ Take of the fynest Cinamome that may be chosen

chosen. iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe fyrst shred it in very small peeces, and then beate it to very fyne powder.

Item of Saffron dryed by the fyre tyll it be blackyshe, of Cassia lignea, fyne Reubarde, Sauine dryed, Myrrhe, of eche of these seuen scrupies, of pure Muske. xvi. graynes, euery of these simples exquisitely by them selues powdred, and then perfectly myxed in one, with. vi. or. vii. droppes of Malueseye, temper the whole masse into lyttle roundels or trochiskes, eche waying a dramme. And in tyme of neede at the womans labour, geue her hardly the wayght of. vi. d. of these trochiskes beaten into fine powder, with. iiii. spoonfulles of Hysope water, and other. iiii. of good wine secke.

This medicine is not onlye profitable at this tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notablye good to expell the after byrth, or anye other suche lyke matter in that place, hauyng neede of expultion.

Item, yf neede do so require, it shalbe very expedient to haue this emplaster folowyng, in a redynesse, the which spread abroade vpon a lynnen cloth, either els vpon leather, and so applyed to the bottome of the bellye in as large maner as maye be, dilateth and openeth the pores of that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth, and dissolueth them, whereby that that is contayned in the bellye kyndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greeuaunce of the mother.

Take of Emplastrum de Melliloto, of Diachilon, of

Oxycroceum, of eche two ounces, of the rootes of Asarum, of wyld Neppe dryed, the leaues of Benioim, of tosted Cummin, of eche two dragmes, of good Castorium, iii. dragmes, of the oyle of Dyll one or two spoonefulles: such of these as are to be powdred, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the bellye and the priuie passage, to prouoke and drawe foorth the latter or hynder byrth yf neede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then lay to this plaster folowyng, whiche is of muche more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum, Myrrhe, of eche an ounce, of Colloquintida, Heleborus niger, of eche two drams, of Castorium, Perethrum, and Storax liquida, of eche three drammes, of Turpentine and Petroleum, of eche foure drammes. Fyrst ouer a soft fyre temper the Turpentine, Petroleum, and Storax liquida, together, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Heleborus, Castorium and Perethrum, beyng fyrst well and finely beaten to powder: after put to the Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum and Myrrhe, beyng fyrst dissolued in good Malueseye, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effect to prouoke the after byrth.

Item, vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layed plasterwyse to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item,

Item, the leaues or flowres of Marygoldes drunke with whyte wine, expell the after byrth. Alſo the ſayde leaues and flowres dryed, and at tyme of neede, kyndeled with a ware candle, and the ſume thereof receaued vnderneath into the priuie part, prouoketh out merueyloully the after byrth.

¶ Item a comfortable pocion, to be taken after the delyueraunce of the chylde.

Take of the ſweeteſt garden Myntes, greene or drye, of the leaues of Baume greene alſo or drye, of the leaues of Maioram, the rootes of Fenell the pyth taken out, the flowres of Buglos, of Roſemarye, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dryed red Roſe leaues, of eche of theſe halfe a handfull, more or leſſe as it pleaſeth you, of Cloues and Maſe bruſed a lyttle, the wayght of two pence, of Cinamome ſhredde in ſmall portions the wayght of. vi. grotes, knyt all theſe togethet in a cloute or lyttle lynnen bagge, and hange the ſame bagge in a quart of Borage water the ſpace of a daye and a nyghte: then take out the ſayde bagge, and reſerue the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wine Secke, or els Muſcadell: and beyng myxt together, put thereto a lyttle of the conſerue of Barberies, conſerue of Borage flowres, conſerue of Roſemarie flowres, and drynke hereof euerye day the ſpace of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure ſpoonefulles of the water, and other foure of the forſayde wyne. And this potion ſhall both comforte the woman, and alſo helpe

greatly to the expulsion of all noysome thynges to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common vsage to geue often to women in theyr chylde bed cawdels of Otemeale, thynkyng and saying thereby the woman to be scoured, whereas in deede the sayde Otemeale is a notable bynder and dryer: Therefore ye shall vnderstand, that the ryght vse thereof is, to geue it to suche as haue alredye ben well and sufficientlye scoured and cleansed from theyr after byrth, and other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and case: but yf the woman be not sufficientlye purged alredy, then geue her no Otemeale caudels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, prayng the women readers hereof, to accept and suffise them selues with these fewe medicines here in this Chapter mentioned, and often by me and other practised. The which thyng yf they shall do so, it shall (no doubt) be occasion to me the sooner to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to refreshe and furnyshe the same with newe and much more excellent experiences then hath ben yet hytherto read or seene in any booke concernyng such matters.

And as touchyng the aboue Trochiskes and emplasters described here in this place, ye shall fynde them alwayes redye made in

Boucklers berie in

London.

¶ In this first Chapter of the thyrde booke, is fyrst declared the matters therein conteyned, and then howe the Infant newely borne muste be handled, nourysshed and looked to. Cap. i.

What is to be done when the chylde is borne.

IN the second booke we haue sufficientlye and at length declared the maners, fashions, and diuersities of byrthes, With the daũgers and perylles often chaunsing to the Women at theyr labours, and after the same. And nowe here in this thyrd booke shalbe entreated What is to be done to the infant borne. And howe to chose a Nurse, & of her office: With manyfolde medicines, & remedies agaynst sundrie infirmities, which eftsones happen to Infantes in theyr infansie.

Then after that the Infant is once come to lyght, by and by the Nauyll muste be cutte three fyngers breadth from the belly, and so knytte vp, and let be strued on the head of that that remayneth, of the powder of Bole armeniache, and Sanguis draconis, Sarcocola, Myrrhe, and Cummin, of eche lyke muche beaten to powder: then vpon that

that bynde a peece of woll, dypped in oyle Olyue that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrste to knyt the Nauyll, and after to cutte it so much, as is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some saye, that of what length the reste of the Nauyll is left, of the same length shal the chyldes tong be, if it be a man child. Item Auicenna saith, that diuers things may be knowen by markyng of the chyldes Nauyll: For (as he sayth) when the woman is deliuered of her first chyld, then behold the Nauyl of the child: which yf in that part of it which is next vnto the body it haue neuer a wrincle, it portendeth and doth signifie perpetuall from thencefoorth sterilitie or baremesse: and yf it haue any wryncles in it: then so manye wrincles, so many chyldren shal the woman haue in time to come. Also some ad to this, and say, that if there be litle space betwene these wrincles in the nauil, then shal there be also litle space betwene the bearyng of the children: if muche, it signifieth long tyme betweene the bearing of them: but these sayinges be neither in the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.

Nowe

Nowe to returne to our purpose, when that the Nauyll is cut of, and the rest knytte vp: annoynt all the chyldes bodye with the oyle of Acornes, for that is singularly good to confyrme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, whiche maye chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and suche other thynges: whiche yf the Infant be greeued withall straight after the birth, beyng yet verye tender, it shoulde hurte it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your fynger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nosethyrlles, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nourse handle so the chyldes syttyng place, that it may be prouoked to purge the belye. And cheefely it must be defended from ouermuch colde, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knotte of the Nauyll is fallen (the whiche commonlye chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth daye) then on the reste remaynyng, strewe the powder or Asshes of a Calfes hoofe burnte, or of Snayle shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wine.

Furthermore, when the Infante is swaddeled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and heede that she bynde euery part ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tenderneſſe and gentle entreatynge, and not crookedly and confuselye, the whiche

also

also must be done oftentymes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in young and tender ympes, plantes and twygges: the whiche, euen as ye bowe them in theyr youth, so wyll they euermore remayne vnto age. And euen so the Infant, yf it be bounde and swadled, the members lying ryght and strayght, then shall it growe strayght and vpryght. If it be crookedly handeled, it wyll growe lykewyse. And to the yll negligence of many Nourses, may be imputed the crokednesse and deformitie of many a man and woman, whiche otherwyse myght seeme as well fauoured as any other.

By the only negligence of Nourses many childe groweth crokebacked, & wrye legged.

Item, let the chyldes eyes be oftentymes wyped and cleansed with a fyne and cleane lynnen cloth, or with sylke. And let the armes of the Infant be verye strayght layde downe by the sydes, that they may growe ryght, and sometyme strokyng the belly of the chylde before the vesycke or bladder, to helpe to ease, and to prouoke the chylde to the makyng of water: and when ye lay it in the Cradell to sleepe, sette the Cradell in suche a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, layeng also the head euer somewhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed two or three tymes in the day, & that anone after sleepe, in the Winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with luke warme water: nether let it tary long in the water, but vnto suche tyme as the bodye begyn

to

to ware red for heate, but take heede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearyng another day.

Then, to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dryed with gentle and soft lynnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe bpwarde, the whiche with her handes let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it bp, and to swaddell it, and when it is swadled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nolet hyllies of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

¶ Of the Nurse and her mylke: and howe long the coylde shoulde sucke. Cap.ii.

As concernyng the bryngyng bp, nourysh-mente, and geuyng of sucke to the chylde, it shalbe beste that the mother geue her chyld sucke her selfe, for the mothers milke is more conuenient and agreeable to the Infant, then any other womans, and more doth it nourysshe it, for because that in the mothers belly it was wont to the same, and fed with it, and therefore also it doth more desyrously couet the same, as that with the which it is best acquaynted. And to be short, the mothers mylke is most holsommest for the chylde.

The mothers mylke best & most familer to the chylde.

chylde, as Auicenna wryteth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twyse or thryse in a daye. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloyyng of it, and least also it lothe it: but rather let it haue often of it, and lyttle at once, then fewe tymes, and ouermuche at once. For suche as be ouer cloyed with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr body to swell and inflate, and in theyr brine shal it appeare, that it is not ouercome ne concocted or digested in the chylde: which thyng yet yf it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyll such tyme as that which it hath receaued alredy be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe or colerike, let her neuer geue the chylde her breast fastyng. Yf it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sycknesse, or that her breastes be sore, and her mylke corrupted: then let her chose a holsome Nourse, with these conditions folowyng.

To chose a good Nurse.

Fyrste that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and breast be of good largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to soone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her labour at the leaste, and that (yf it may be) such one whiche had a man chylde.

Thyrdly, that she be of meane and measurable lykyng, neyther to fatte ne to leane. Fourthlye, that she be good and honeste of conuersation, neyther ouer hastye or yrefull, ne to sadde or solome

lome, neyther to fearefull or tymorous: for these affections and qualities be pernitious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe foorth through the mylke into the childe, makyng the chylde of lyke condition and maners. Also that they be not ouerlyght and wanton of behauiour. Fyfthly, that her breastes be full, and haue sufficient plentie of mylke, and that they be neyther to greate, softe, hangyng, and flaggyng, ne to lyttle, harde, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

The consyderation of the Nurses mylke.

Also looke vppon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, grey, or reddyshe, neyther sower, sharpe, saltyshe, or brackyshe, neyther thynne and fluy, neyther ouer grosse and thycke, but temperately whyte, and pleasaunt in taste.

And to be short, that mylke is best and moste to be chosen, of the which a droppe beyng mylked softely vpon the nayle of the thumbe, holdyng your fynger styll it rolleth not of, neyther flytteth abroade, but yf ye moue your hande a lyttle it wyll slyde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it spreade abroade, and flyt by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styll when that ye moue a lytle your hande, then is it to spysse and thicke. The meane betweene both is best.

If it be so that the Nourses mylke be to hot, sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chylde sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometyme it chaunceth that the mothers or Nourses mylke doth fayle or decrease, the

which

Diuers cau-
ses of the de-
fect or fay-
ling of mylk

which thyng may come by dyuers cauſes: as by ſickneſſe, by diſeaſe in the breaſtes, or by takyng of colde in the ſame, and ſo ſtoppe and cludder the mylke, or for becauſe ſhe lacketh ſuche thynges the which myght engender mylke, other by ouermuch faſtyng, hunger and thyrſt, the which cauſes muſte be well conſydered: and then accordyng to that, miniſter a remedie.

Thynges which do augment and encreaſe mylke be theſe.

Lette her vſe to eate Parſnyp, eyther the ſeede or the roote: alſo the ſeede or roote of Fenyll, ſodden in the broth made with Barley or Cicercula, let her eate of that with other meates that ſhe feedeth on.

Item, to eate ſheepes breaſtes, and the mylke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and diſſolue it in warme whyte wine, the whiche let the Nurſe drynke.

Item, boryng vnder the breaſtes doth well, without ſcarification.

Item, a plaſter for the ſame of Frankencenſe, Maſticke, and Pitche, layde to the breaſtes, or vnder the breaſtes, the ſhynne fyrſte beyng annoynted with oyle, leaſt it ſhoulde cleaue ouer faſt to the place.

Item, it ſhalbe verye good to rubbe ſoftlye with the hande the breaſtes, or els in bathynge after dynner or ſupper, to cauſe ſome to ſucke her breaſt.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or of violettes, and myngle with it Muſke, Enſence, and

and Laudanum, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of wooll, and clappe it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item washe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the which is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, Violettes, and Xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, Cardamomum, and also the yolke of an egge.

Item it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also potage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fine flowre, tempered with Milke and Suger, putting to it also a quantitie of Fenell seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item take of Annis seede, of Siler montanum, of eche three drams, of Chrystall beaten to powder two drams, & as muche of Suger, geue her this to drinke about ten dayes, at morning, euenyng, and myd day.

Item take of Fenel seede, or the leaues, and of Horehounde, of eche two handfulles, of Annis seede foure drams, of Saffron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter three ounces, and seethe all these in sufficient water, makyng hereof a plaster, the same plaster whilest it is hoate, laye it to the Nurses brest.

Item take of Cummin seede an ounce and an halfe, & of clarified Hony three ounces, seethe it in fiue pyntes of water altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seethe to the third parte, and

of this decoction geue the Nurse oftentymes to drynke.

Item take of Beetes well washed one ounce, of Cummin halfe an ounce, of Honye sixe ounces, of these myngled and tempered together, make an electuarie, of the whiche let her take both in the morning and euening, at eche time a sponefull.

Item take two drams of Crystall beaten into fyne powder, and diuide that in foure equall partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, or elles of pealon.

Also all these thinges folowyng, encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes: Annise, and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Horehounde, Cardamomum, freshe Cheese, Wortes made of olde Cheese, Cicer, Cristal beaten to pouder & taken with Hony, Lettuse, Fenel, wine in whiche Rosemarye or Sauery be sodden.

Companying with men corrupteth the nurses mylke.

Item to abstayne from venery or mans company: for yf the vse that, it shall spende and consume the Mylke, and make it vnsauery and vnholsome, neyther can the chylde well brooke it, but moste commonly shall cast it vp agayne, because it can not digest it.

Also it shalbe beste that the chylde sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womannes, for a day or two, for because that the creame (as they call it) straight after the byrth, the fyrst day

in

in all women doth thicken and congele.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer sore lared, or that she be ouer bounde, so that she take anye medicines to remedie it: then let another geue the chylde sucke whyleſt she be recouered agayne. And when the chylde is layde in cradell to be rocked, roche not to faste, leaſte through ouer much rockyng and styrringe, the chyldes stomache turne, and the Wylke there corrupt for lacke of reſt.

Howe long the chylde should sucke

Auiſen aduiſeth to geue the chylde sucke two yeares: howbe it amonge vs moſte commonly, they sucke but one yere. And when ye wyll weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a litle and litle, and to make for it litle pylles of bread and Suger to eate, and accuſtome it so, tyll it be able to eate all maner of meate: and this shall ſuffiſe for the education and bringing vp of infantes at this tyme. Notwithſtandyng dyuers other thynges here are left vnſpoken of, another tyme God wylling we shal declare them at large.

¶ Of diuers diſeaſes and infirmities whiche chaunce to chyldren lately borne, and the remedies therfore. Cap. iii.

Many diſeaſes of Infantes.

ALthough there be in maner infinite diſeaſes which happen the Infantes, as writeth Hipocrates, Galenus,

Racis, Auicenna, and diuers other: yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here onlye suche of them whiche moste commonly happen to the same, & that be these: exulceration of the gummes, flixe of the belly, or ouermuch loosenes of the same, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the coughe and distillation of the head, shorte wyndnes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clypping of the mouth, apostume in the eares, apostume in the brayne, swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, skumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, knawyng in the bellye, the body swelling and puffed vp, often sneesing, wheales or bladders of the body, swelling of the coddes, swelling of the Nauyl, vnslepinesse, yerning. appetite to parbreake, fearefulnesse in the dreames, the mother issuyng out of the fundement gutte, wormes in the bellye, chaufyng, the fallyng sickenesse, the consumption, the palsye, trembiyng of the partes of the body, the stone, goggle eyes.

How

¶ Howe to cure and to remedie all these, now wyl I shewe in order.

FIrst in exulceration of the gummes, are wont certayne pushes, and as it were wheales to growe on the gummes, or in the corners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to muche greeuaunce: and to remedie this, it shalbe good that ye with your fynger rubbe the infantes gummes, and the pushes or whelkes withal, and then to annoynt the same gummes with oyntment made of Hennes greece, Hares or Conyes brayne, oyle of Camomell mirt with hony: then take water, and in it seethe Camomell and Dyll, the whiche water beyng hoate, powre it on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote aboue the head. Of exulceration of the gums.

¶ Of the flire and ouermuch loosenes of the belly.

FOr this take the seede of Roses, Cumin, Annise, and the seede of Smallage, beate all these together, and make them plaisterwyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly. For the flix in chyldren.

And farther, yf that it whiche the infante boydeth be of redde or yelowe colour, then geue it to drynke of the syrope of Roses, or of Crabbes, other els of Pomegranates, tempered with a litle Wynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorell, and beate it, then temper it together with the yolke of a

rosted egge, and geue that to the chylde to eate, or els take of the same seede bruised fyrst, and then seethe it in fayre runnyng water, thereof let the chylde drynke two or three tymes the day.

Item take a gall, and beate it to pouder, then seethe it in water, with this water temper Barlye meale, or the meale of Mellium, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes belly.

Item, yf that that commeth from the chylde be whytyshe, then take of Nutmegs the weight of a peny, and of whyte Frankencense a scruple, or the weyght of two pence, the which temper with the iuyce of a Quince, and geue it to the chylde to drynke.

Item, take the meale of Barley, temper it with the iuyce of Plantane, and a litle Vineger, and make it plasterwyse, and laye it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a litle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of Centinodium, and the whyte of an egge, and temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dryed red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Mastiche, Frankencense, Bole armeniake, Sanguis Draconis, & the rindes of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chylde with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce

of

of Plantane the moze and the leſſe, and in this put claye of an olde furneſſe oz Ouen, and make of it a plaſter, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

¶ To vnlooſe the chylde beyng bounde.

IF the chylde be ſo bounde, that it can not long tyme haue any ſtoole, then make a ſuppoſitarie of Hony, ſodden till it be harde and maſſye, and let the ſuppoſitary be of the lengthy of your litle finger, and the bigneſſe of two wheate ſtrawes bounde together, then dippe it into oyle, and conuey it into the chyldes foundement.

Item, lykewyſe ye may make a ſuppoſitar of the ſtalke and the roote of Beates, oz els of the roote called Orelle oz Flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie before ſpoken, and conuayed into the ſitting place of the childe.

Item, to geue to the Infant as much Hony as a peaſe to drynke, and to rubbe the belly a litle, and to ſouple it with a peece of wooll dipped in oyle, oz dipped in Bulles gall, and layde to the Nauell.

Item, ye may geue vnto the Nurſe a medicine whiche hath vertue to vnbynde and looſe, and the next day after let the chylde ſucke her, and it wyll looſe alſo the chylde.

Item, take of ſmall Mallowes, of great Mallowes, of eche an handfull, of Fenegreke & Lineſeede of eche an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, of figges the number of .x. ſeethe all theſe together in water, and then ſtampe them in a moꝛter, and

put vnto it of Butter and of Hennes grece of eche two ounces, and of Saffron one ſcruple, and make a plaſter of it vpon a linnen cloth, of the thickneſſe of a ſtraw, and lay it to the chyldes belly, a day and a nyght.

Yf this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes, Cicotrine one dram, of Heleborus both niger and albus, of eche .xb. graynes, beate theſe to powder, then temper them with three ſponefuls of the iuyce of Walwurt, or of Ore gall, in this licour dippe woll, and lay it to the Nauell the breadth of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Walwurt and of Mill meale, & ſeethe thoſe together, till they be thicke, then make a plaſter thereof, and lay it to the belly beneath the Nauell.

¶ Remedie for the crampe or diſtention of the members.

IF it chaunce that the infante be taken with the diſeaſe called the crampe, the whiche for the moſte part commeth of indigeſtion, and of the weakeneſſe of the power attractiue, and ſpecially in ſuche chyldren the whiche be verye fat and moyſte, then ſhall ye annoynt all along the backe of the infante with the oyle of blewe Flowredeluce, or els white Lillies, either the oile of Rue.

Yf the crampe take the chylde whyleſt it ſtretcheth foorth the armes, legges, and other members (as we be wont in gaping or ianyng) then let

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the whiche prime Roses, Coulappes, or the flowres of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with the oyle of Violettes, and the oyle of sweete Almons tempered together: and yf the chylde be in greate heate, annoynt him with the oyle of Violettes, or with oyle Olyue, tempered with a litle whyte ware, and also powre on the childes head the oyle of violettes.

Remedie for the cough and distillation, or Catarrhes of the head.

SOmetymes the chylde is sore encombred with the coughe, and with distillation or running of humours out of the head, to the nose, the mouth, & the brest, ỹ which ye shal remedy thus.

Fyrst powre warme water on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the chyldes head, and so do continually the space of halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a litle Honye on the chyldes tongue to chawe vpon: then put your fynger into the chyldes mouth, and depresse or holde downe the innermoste part, or the roote of the tongue nexte to the throte, to prouoke the chylde to vomite, and to voyde the grosse and viscouse humours whiche be cause of this yll.

Item take Gumme Arabicke, Gumme Dragagant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Lycorise, and Suger penedium, all this beaten together

gether, geue euery day to the chylde a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke, with Almondes blanched, and only the iuyce or water of Fenell, wherof when it is well sodden, let the chylde eate or drynke mornyng and euenyng, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the cough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue and the roofe of the mouth, then take of the seedes of Quinces two sponefulles, bruise them a litle, and stype them in warme water the space of two or three houres, then strayne the viscouse & grosse water from them through a strayner, and that remayneth, frye it together in a frying panne with Suger Penidium, and the oile of sweete almondes, thereof makyng an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chylde to receaue: yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the same electuarie, the iuyce of a sweete Pomegranate.

Item agaynst the cough and ouer muche heate, take the seede of white Popie and Dragagant, of eche two drams, of the seedes of Gowardes foure drams, and beate all these together, and geue at once the weight of foure pence to the chylde, with the water in whiche reasons haue ben sodden.

Item, take Reasons, and doyng away the graynes of it, seeth them together with water in a frying panne, so that they burne not to the bottome of the panne: then take it from the fyre and

and beate it well in a morter, temperyng therwithall Suger Penidium, and geue of this in the mornyng and euenyng to the chylde.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a litle Myrrhe beaten to powder, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Hony, and the oyle of sweete Almondes, and of this geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore the Nurse must auoyde all such thinges, the which may engender cough, as Vineger, ouer muche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts, & all sharpe thinges. Also she must annoynt the chyldes brest with butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasons and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a morter, and to that adde as muche of Suger Penidium, with a litle oyle of Violettes, & make an electuarie of these, and geue to the chylde the mountenaunce of a hasell Nut.

Remedy for short wynde.

MAny tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of brething or short windnesse: the which to remedie, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the chylde with Hony: but yf the disease encrease on the chylde, and that the wynde pipes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and all the places about the eares with oyle Olyue, and also the tongue, for to prouoke vomite, and then powre a litle warme water into the chyldes mouth to washe it withall, and geue to it a litle Lineseede, tempered with Honye and beaten, made after the

the fashion of an electuarie.

Item, yf the chylde haue besydes this also the flix: then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtyls, other els Dates sodden with Milke and flowre.

Against wheales or bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the chyldren wheales and blisters on theyr tongues and mouth, whiche thinges commeth of the sharpenesse and eagernesse of the Nurses mylke, the mouth and tongue of the Infant beyng so tender, that the least thing that toucheth it, shal offende it: Wherfore, besides that it is great payne to the chyld thus to be blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it is also very perillous and daungerous. For suche wheales which be not ripe & seeme blacke, betoken death: whiche yf they be whyte or yelowyshe, then they be of lesse peryll.

Agaynst this yll, take Violettes and Roses, and seethe them in a litle Rose water, and therwith washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Letuse, the iuyce of Petie

Petie mozell, and the iuyce of Purslayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith the whelkes. And yf the forsayde blysters or whelkes be blackishe: then adde to the forsayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item yf the same be very moyste, then take Myrrhe, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them wel together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynt the chyldes tongue therewith.

Item take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully rype, other els of vnrype grapes, which is called Uergeus, and with that annoynt the tongue.

Item, it is verye good to washe the tongue with redde wine, and then to strewe vpon it the pouder of Galles, or els of the barke or rine of Frankencense.

Yf ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper: then take Bole armeniake, Plidium, and Sumach, of eche three drams: also of Galles two drams, of Alome one dram, all these beate together, and searse them through a searser, and strewe that powder on the blisters.

Item yf these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse suche thinges whiche are moyste and colde, and let her chawe in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the which lay on the Infantes mouth and tongue.

Item Amilum or starch tempered together with

Rose

Rose water, & put on the childes tongue, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oranges, and do of this on the chyldes tongue in lyke maner: but yf the wheales or blysters be somewhat yelowyshe, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselayne. But yf the wheales seme whytishe, then take of Myrrhe and of Saffron, of eche one dramme, of Suger candye two drams, and beate these to pouder, and lay of it on the wheales and tongue.

¶ Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynynge of the mouth.

SOmetymes by reason of the hardnes of the Nurses pappes, the chyldes lyppes and mouth be exulcerate, hauing in maner of clefte & chinnes in them: and in this case take tozed woll, and dyp it in the iuyce of Plantaine, or els in Butter molten, or in freth Hens greace, euery of them beyng warme, and with this annoynt the mouth and lippes of the chylde.

Of appostumation and runnyng of the eares.

WHEN that humours and matter yssueth out of the eares, which properlye commeth of aboundaunt humours in all the bodye, and most specially in the heade: then take a peece of wooll, and dyppe it in Hony mixt with redde wine, to the whiche is put also a litle quantitie

quantitie of Alome beaten to powder, or of Saffron, then make of the same as it were a tente, and put it in the chyldes eare, and when the tent hath suched and drawen to it the humours and fylthynesse of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that which commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, & temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the pouder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger, and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chylde haue great payne and dolour by wyndnesse, ventolitie, and the humours in this place: then seethe Organy and Myrrhe with oyle Olyue, and so beyng warme, put of it into the eares.

Of apostumation in the head.

If there be any apostume engendered in the head, (whiche many times chaunceth) the which causeth the chekes & eies to be greatly payned, & the eye sight to ware wannyshe or tawnye: then must be applied such thinges whiche may refrigerate and coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Gowardes, and the iuyce of Nyghtshade, iuyce of Purslayne, and temper them with the oyle of Roses, in this dyppe a peece of wooll, and laye it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye, dyp it agayne.

Of

¶ Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

AGaynst swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take Licium, and temper it with womans Wylke, & put of it into the chyldes eyes, and bynde it to the place with a fine and soft linnen cloth: then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in which Camomel and Basill haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not red, neither the browes swollen: then take Myrrhe, Aloes, Saffron, and the leaues of Roles, and temper all these, and steepe them in old wine, and binde it to the chyldes eyes with some linnen cloth, and into the chyldes nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolued in womans Wylke.

¶ Of the scum or whyte of the eye.

AGaynst the scum or whyte of the eye, whiche for the moste parte happeneth to chyldren through ouer muche crying and weepyng, take the iuyce of Solatrum, and drop of the same into the chyldes eye, and yf by the same chaunce the vayne of the eyes ware reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

¶ Agaynst immoderate heate, or the feuer.

IF the Infante be in greate and vehemente heate contrary to nature, the whiche is called a feuer: Fyrste it shalbe the Nurses parte, to eate and vse suche thynges the whiche coole and moysten.

Also

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thynges folowyng. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Gourdes, Suger, with a little Camphere mixed herewithall, tempered well together. Item it is very good to prouoke it to sweatyng.

Item, take of the iuyce of Woormewood, of Plantane, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seethe them a lyttle on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barlye meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chyldes breaste. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and myxe them together, with this oyntment beyng colde annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wristes, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dryed Roses, and powdred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make thereof on the fyre a plaster, the whiche laye to the chyldes breastes somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chylde is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges whiche coole: as Letuce, Purslane, Endiue, Plantane, and suche other.

Agaynst frettyng or gnawyng in the belly.

IF the chylde be vexed with frettyng and gnawyng in the bellye, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate crying of the chylde, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great crying: then shall you take

warme water, wherein hath ben ſodden Lauender, Cummin, Fenell ſeede, or the ſeede of Dyll, and oyle Oliue, temperyng them together, and herein dip a peece of wooll, and therewith looke the chyldes belly oftentymes.

Agaynſt ſwellyng of the body.

When the chyldes bodye or any parte thereof is ſwollen & puffed vp, then take the toppes of Elder tree, and of walwurt, and ſeethe them in whyte wyne, and therein lap the Infant, ſpecially yf it be not taken with ouer greate heate: but yf ſo be that with ſwellyng in the head the bellye be ſwollen alſo, thē take Myrrhe, Aloes epatike, and Saffron, and beate them altogether, and temper them with the iuyce of Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

Agaynſt often ſneelyng.

Sometymes the Infantes be ſore troubled and vexed with often ſternutation and ſneelyng: whiche thyng yf it come of the apoſtume in the head, then ſhal ye miniſter ſuch thynges to the head, whiche refrigerate and coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces of the hearbes, or other thynges. If this come of any other cauſe then of apoſtume: then take Baſyll be it greene or drye, and put of the iuyce or powder of it into the chyldes noſe. But yf this ſneelyng come and begyn with heate, and that the chyldes eyes ſeeme as they grewe inwarde for payne thereof: then lay to the chyldes

head

head the leaues of Purſlane, or Gowarde cutte in thynne ſlyces and tempered with the oyle of Roſes, and Barley meale, and alſo the yolke of an egge.

Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

THeſe whelkes yf they appeare blache vppon the body, they ſignifie peryll of lyfe, and ſo muche the more, the greater quantitie that there is of them: but yf they ſeeme whytyſhe or reddiſhe, it is no peryll, and may eaſyly be cured. Wherefore take the leaues of the redde Roſe, the leaues of Mirtils, and of Tamariſcus, and ſeeth theſe in water, and in that water wet a linnen cloth, and ſoke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lykewyſe it is good to annoynte the ſame with the oyle of Roſes, of Mirtilles, and Tamariſcus. If the whelkes be whyte or reddiſhe, then let them be rype before ye miniſter anye thing to them: and when they be open and begyn to matery, then to cleanſe, purifie, and to drye them, beyng rype and broken, it is verye good to walhe the ſame whelkes with Mulſum or Hydromell, in whiche Saltpeter is diſſolued. Mulſum and Hydromell is, water and Honye ſodden together.

Agaynſt ſwellyng of the coddes.

MAny tymes chaunceth to chyldren (throwe ouermuche crying) ſwellyng about the coddes, and ſometymes burſteneſſe,

and swellyng in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swellyng sometymes commeth by inflamation or great heate, and sometyme with onlye wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddes wyll sometymes appeare so styffe as a tabour, and shyne as it were an horne. The remedye for this is to take a quart of double Beere woort, and therein seethe of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue a quarter of an handfull, of Fenell, Dyll, and Camonell, of eche a meane handfull: cutte and broole all these hearbes together, and seethe them from the quarte to the pinte, then strayne them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer seethe so muche beane flowre as may serue to make a plaster, therto addyng at the latter ende two or three spoonefulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddes. If the swellyng come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, suche as I haue often tymes spoken of before.

¶ Agaynst swellyng of the Nauyll.

ALso sometymes the chyldes Nauyll swelleth, and specially strayght after the byrth when it is cutte. For this, take Spyke Celtyke, and seethe it in the oyle of Almondes, myxed with a lytle Turpentine: then in this dyppe wooll, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swellyng come of ouermuche crying, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of layre

faire olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, and temper these with red wine, and then in this dyp a peece of towe, and lay it to the Mauyll.

¶ Agayst vnsleepynesse.

AGainst vnsleepinesse, that is, when the child is destitute and wanteth his due and naturall rest, all the whyle crying and weepyng. For this take two heades (with the seedes therin contayned) of whyte Popie, and with one sponefull of Rose water, and three or foure droppes of vineger, stampe them in a morter reasonably, then adde thereto two sponefulles of womans milke, and the waight of an halfpeny of Saffron, with halfe a sponefull of Barlie flowre, the whiche yet stampe a little together agayne, and then laye it in a fine thinne double lynnen cloth, and applie it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a little of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnsleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurses mylke (as manye tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of Violettes, and put vnto it a little quantitie of vineger, and of this licour droppe oftentymes into the chyldes nosethrilles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, and temper it with the iuyce of Letuse, and therwith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, and farther, see that the Nurses mylke may be amended.

¶ Agaynſt yeryng or the hyckate.

THis yeryng commeth eyther of coldneſſe of the ſtomacke, other els of ouermuche fulneſſe, or for lacke of meate and emptines of the ſtomacke, or els by ſome hotte and colerike qualitie bytyng vppon the mouth of the ſtomacke.

As often as it commeth by the aboundaunce of meate and fulneſſe, the remedie is to prouoke it to vomite. If by coldenes of the ſtomacke, then annoynt the ſtomacke with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the ſtomacke a plaſter made of the ſeede of Dyll, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Myntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate or colerike qualitie, then take the oyle of Violettes, or of Roſes, the iuyce of Endiue, or of any other ſuche hearbes the whiche haue power to infrigidate and coole, and temper the ſame with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes ſtomacke.

And when it proceedeth by defecte and lacke of meate or emptineſſe of the ſtomacke, then geue to the chylde to feede vppon mylke, and other good holſome thynges to ſuppe, neyther paſſe not greatly though the chylde reiecte and vomite vp agayne that the whiche it receaueth, for ſo muche euer wyll remayne in the ſtomacke that ſhalbe ſufficient to ſuſtayne it, and meanely to nouryſhe it.

¶ Agaynſt

Agaynſt often parbreakyng by weakeneſſe and feeblenelle of the ſtomacke.

AGainſt ouermuch parbreaking, beat foure graynes of Cloues, and geue it to the chylde to drynke with foure or fyue ſpoonefulles of red wine.

Item, take of Maſticke, whyte Frankencenſe, and the leaues of the red Roſe ſo muche as ſhalbe ſufficient, and all theſe beaten togethyer, temper them with the iuyce of Myntes, and make a plaſter of it, laying it to the chyldes ſtomacke. But yf the chyldes vomityng be very behement, then put vnto theſe foreſayde thynges a quantitie of Roſe vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it ſo hot in an ouen, or els in a frying panne ouer the fyre tyll it ware broune, then beate it to powder agayne, puttyng it into vineger, and to theſe ad the yolke of an egge hard rolled, Maſticke, Frankencenſe, and Gumme Arabicke, and temper all theſe with the iuyce of Myntes, makyng of it a plaſter, the whiche laye to the chyldes ſtomacke, and to the childes mouth and noſe hold a warme tolte of breade.

Cauſes of this yll be three. The fyrſt, yf the chylde haue taken more mylke then it is able to concocte and digeſt. The ſeconde, yf the Nurſes mylke be ouerthinne, watery lye, and fluſhe. The thyrde, yf the ſame mylke be impure, feculent, and corrupte. Theſe cauſes prouoke vomite, and ſpeciallye yf the chylde alſo haue a

weake and waterishe stomache: wherfore ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.

First let the childe sucke lesse then it did before, and then also marke that which the childe doeth perbrake, whether it sauer sharpely lyke Uenegar, or that it be whytyshe. For yf it be so: then take of whyte Frankensence. viii. graynes, of dryed Rue. xx. graynes: beate these to powder, and geue it to the childe to drinke, with the syrope of red Roses.

Or els let the Nurse chawe Cummin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chylde.

Take Mastiche, Accatia, Xiloaloes, Galles, whyte Frankensence, tosted bread, of eche lyke much, beate them together, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

But if it so be that the perbrakyng of the childe sauer not after the fashion of Uineger, but after some other sowre sauour, and that it be not whytyshe, but pale or yelowyshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, and lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomache. Take Barlye meale, wyld Mulberies, and Psidium, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomache be somewhat watershe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynt it with the water of Roses, in the which Muske hath ben dissolued, or els the

water

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the iuyce of Quinces, with a little Cloues and Suger, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith tempered and mixed.

¶ Agaynst fearfull and terrible dreames.

ALso sometyme the chyldren be vexed and vnquieted with fearefull and terrible dreames in their sleepe, which thyng for the most part commeth of the aboundaunce of foode, and ouermuch meate or drynkes, which for the copie and superfluitie therof, can not be conuict ne ouercome of nature, wherfore necessaryly it putrifieth and corrupteth: the noysome & hideous vapours wherof, stying vp to the head in tyme of sleepe, causeth these terrible fantasies in the sleepe. And thus may it be remedyed. First take heede that ye lay not the chylde to sleepe straycht after it hath fed, and also let it licke a litle hony, swallowyng it downe, so that by it, such thinges the which be somwhat harde to digest and concoct, may the sooner be digested, and the refuse the more easyly to descende into the guttes.

Item, euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram of the electuarie called Diamuscum, or Diaplicis. Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with mylke, as saith Rasis.

¶ Agaynst illuyng foorth of the fundament gut.

FOR the illuyng foorth of this gut, when the chylde laboureth to ease it selfe: Take Mirtylles, Acorne cuppes, red Roses dryed, burnt

burnt Hartes hornes, burnte Alome, Goates hoofe, Balauſtium, and Galles, of eche lyke much, and ſeethe all theſe together with water, ſo long tyll the water haue receaued the ſtrength of the ingredience, and with this water beyng warme, waſhe the gut, and ſo conuey it into the bodye agayne, as I taught you in the ſeconde booke.

¶ Agaynſt Tenaſmus.

TEnaſmus is a diſeaſe when the child enforceth it ſelf to the ſtoole, and yet can do nothyng, the whiche thyng oftentymes chaunceth to children, moſte commonly proceedyng of colde. Agaynſte the which, ye ſhall vſe theſe remedies. Take Garden Creſſes and Cummin ſeede, of eche lyke muche, beate them together and temper them with olde butter, and geue it to drynke to the chylde with colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, and laye it vppon coales, whoſe fume let the chylde receaue beneathe in the fundement, the fume beyng incloſed rounde about with clothes.

Item, take Tarre, and lykewyſe make fume of it, receauyng the fume as before.

Agaynſt wormes in the belly.

SOmetymes there breede wormes in the guttes, of the bygneſſe and quantitie of ſuche as are wonte to be in olde Cheeſe, called Mytes, and ſome lyke lyce. And ſometyme in the belly be engendred wormes of the bygneſſe

nesse of earthy wormes, called Eases. Agaynst these vse this remedy, Take the water of Centum nodia, and geue it to the chylde to drynke with mylke.

Item, take of whyte Corall, the scrapyng of Iuery, of Hartes horne burnte, and of Treos, of eche a scruple, of Suger candie one ounce and an halfe, of the water of Centumnodia, so muche as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, and of this make suppositaries, ministryng to the chylde euery day the wayght of two drammes.

Otherwyse accordyng to Rasis mynde: Take of Cummin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Ore gall, makyng thereof a plaster, the whiche ye shall lay to the Infantes Nauyll.

Item, oyle Oliue taken and drunken a small quantitie thereof, is very good to kyll all maner of wormes whiche breede in the gutte, neere to the fundement: Take the fynest cotten, & thereof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt with the oyle of Wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kyrnelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chyldes syttyng place.

Item, it shall greatly profite the chylde, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden Wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntmente for the same. Take of Wormewood & of Lupines, of eche two drams, of

Siler

Siler montanum, Cummin, Cockle, Centorie, and Centonicum, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, all these thynges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of Wormewood, or of bytter Almons the wayght of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of ware, and make hereof an oyntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fire, or in some warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of Wormwood and Mastiche of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of Coriander preparat, fire drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rye meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder, fire drammes, of Saffron two drammes, temper al these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Nauyll the breadth of a hande.

Item, geue the chylde the wayght of foure pence of the powder of Aloes cicotrine, with fayre water fyrste sodden and sweeted with Suger, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is soueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long wormes. Take of the iuice of Wormewood, and of Dre gal, of both two ounces, of Colocinthis. viii. drammes, temper all these well together, addyng to it a lyttle Wheaten meale, and make hereof a plaster, the whiche laye to the Nauyll of the chylde.

Item,

Item a bathe for the same.

Take Wormewood, and Gaules, and seethe them in water, and let the chylde be bathed in it vp to the Nauyll.

Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

AGaynst gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skynne, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpenes of vrine or sweate: Take Myrtils and beate them to powder, and strewe thereof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Cipрus, of Tragacantum, so much as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, and strewe of the powder on the chaufed places.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte Frankencense one dramme, and melt these together, and then take eyght graynes of Camphire dissolued in Rose water, and myxt therwithall, and of all this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall. Also Vnguentum album, and Vnguentum rubeum be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherein Plantane, knot grasse, docke rootes, or Bursa pastoris is sodden, is very good for the same.

Of the fallyng sickenesse.

SOmetymes these Infantes be vexed and encumbred with the fallyng sycknesse, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that it

it hath this diſeaſe ſtrayght forth with the byrth: Cauſe of the whiche, is colde and yll humours in the head and braynes. Another is, that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by ſome accidentall cauſes, in whiche caſe, yf it leaue not the childe, being a manchylde, before he be.xxb. yeres of age, and the woman chylde about the tyme of hauyng her fyrſte flowres: yf it forſake them not in this ſpace, neyther by the myght of nature, neyther of medicines, then is it lyke neuer to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this diſeaſe come not by nature, but by ſome accidentall cauſe afterwarde, then geue diligent heede that the Nurſes mylke be very good, and conuenient to the chyldes nature. And for the ſame purpoſe yf neceſſitie require, it ſhalbe verye good to purge and cleanſe the Nurſes bodye with due and meete medicines, and ſhe muſt auoyde all ſuche thynges the which do coole and moyſten, and to ſuffer the chylde to receaue no more mylke at once, then it may be able well to digeſt.

Againſt this cruell diſeaſe, auchours muche commende the roote of a Pionie, only hanged about the chyldes necke.

Item, the ſame roote dryed and beaten to powder, and ſo oftentimes geuen to the chyld to take, ſometymes with drynke, ſometymes with potage, pap, or mylke, or any other wayes. Lykewyſe the ſeede of Pionie is very good.

Farthermore, powre nowe and then into the childes noſethrils of oyle of Caſtorium, or the oyle

of

of Coſtus, or of Euforbium: Alſo let the chylde ſmell to Rue and to Aſa fetida.

Item, to hang Viſcum querſimum, which is gathered in Marche the moone decreaſyng, about the chyldes necke, is verye good. Dyuers other thynges there be whiche myght be here rehearſed, but this ſhalbe ſufficient at this tyme.

¶ Conſumption or pynyng away of the body.

When the Infant falleth away, and the fleſhe rebateth, remaynyng nothing but as it were ſkyn and bone, and thereby the chylde wareth ſyckelye: Then let the Infante be often bathed in water, in whiche hath ben ſodden the head and the feete of a weather, ſo long tyll the fleſhe part from the bones of his owne accorde, and euery tyme that the chylde commeth foorth of the bath, fyrſt let it be wyped and dryed cleane, and then annoynte it with this oyntmente.

Take freſhe Butter, oyle of Violettes, and oyle of Roſes, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freſhe Porke halfe an ounce, of white ware two drammes, melt all theſe thynges together, and make an oyntement of it, annoyntyng therewith the chyldes body.

Item, take white ware, Swines greaſe, ſheepes tallowe, freſhe Butter, melte all theſe thynges together, and ſtrayne them, makyng of it an oyntment, and annoynte the chylde withall once or twyle euerye daye. But the cheefe hope of

of restauration muste be in light, restorative, and pure nourishing meates.

¶ Of lassitude, weerynesse, or heavynesse of the chyldes body.

SOmetymes it chaunceth that the chyldes members of the body be so feeble, as though it had the paulsie, so that with that partes of the bodye, the chylde can not helpe it selfe, neither can it lyft vp the handes, armes, ne stand on the feete. If the chylde haue this disease whilest it sucketh, then let the Nourse be comforted, and strengthened with suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to heate and to dryе. Also let the Nourse feede only vpon rosted and fryed meates, and that she forbeare from mylke, fyshe, and harde or salt powdred flesshe, for commonlye this disease spryngeth of colde and moyste humours, besieging the sinewes.

Farthermore, let not the Nourse vse any watered wine, or mixed, but mere and in his owne kynde, and let her bathe the chylde euer before she geue it sucke, after annoyntyng it with the oyle of Castorium, or the oyle of Costum, and let the chylde drynke euery day a quantitie of this electuarie folowyng.

Take Garden Mint, Cinamome, Cummin, dryе Roses, Mastick, Fenugreke, Valeriane, Amios, Doronicum, Zedoarium, Cloues, Saunders, Xiloadoes, of ech a dram, of Muske halfe a dramme, beate all those to powder, and conflict them with clarified and depured honye, make thereof an electuarie,

electuarie, of the whiche euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with whyte wine. If the chylde haue this disease in euery part of his bodye, then take an ounce of waxe, and a dram of Euforbium, the which Euforbium ye shall beate in a morter with .v. or .vi. droppes of oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fyre, adding thervnto so much oyle as may be sufficient to make a searecloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

¶ Of trembling of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsey.

If the chylde happen to be vexed with trembling or shaking of the body, or the partes therof, so that ye feare the palsy of the same parte, or that the falling sickneſſe shoulde ensue: then remedie it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, and temper them together, warmyng it, and therewith annoynt the backe or raynes, and the other shakyng members: ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bathe the chylde in the decoction of Rosemarye, Sage, Tyme, Hyssope, Sauery, Alexander, Smallage. &c. is very soueraigne. If you can not cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsayle of the Phisitions.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stopping of the vryne.

STrangury, Dissury, and the difficultie in makyng of water, oftentymes chaunceth to childzen by reason of the stone, or aboundaunce of grauell, other els many tymes of some other viscous, slimye, and flegmatike matter, in maner and fourme of dzegs or ragges ouerwharting and crossing the passage, whereby the vrine shoulde passe soozth, in such wyse, that (without great payne) the chylde can not make his water, and that yet but in small quantitie at once.

Whiche of these wayes so euer it come, it shalbe verye good to bathe the chylde vp to the Nauyll in the decoction of Paritozie of the wall, Mallowes, Holyoke, Lyneseede, Lillie rootes, Fenegreke, and Sauery, other els with a spunge or double lynnen cloth dypped therein, eftsones to foment the share and neather part of the belly agaynst the bladder.

But in men chyldzen cheefely foment them on the straightes, betwene the fundement and the coddes, the which place in Latine is called Perineum, foz there in them lyeth the necke of the bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation, dzye the places fomented, and whilest they be yet redde with bathing, annoynt them with the oyle of scozpions, to be hadde at the Apothecaries, or els the oyle called Petroleum.

And yf farther neede shall require it, ye may applie

applie this plaster folowyng to the forsayde places. Take of Parseley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handefull, of Paritorie, Mallowes, Holyoke rootes, of eche an handfull, seethe these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll such tyme as they be soft, then powre out the ale from them, and stampethe hearbes in a stone morter, adding therevnto of the seedes of Fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lyke wyse to fine powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, Petroleum, or other appertisse oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these well commired together, make a plaster, and lay to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administred inwardes, it is but folly, for so muche as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thing within foorth.

This difficultie in makyng water, maye ensue by other meanes, whereof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

Of goggle [illegible] looking a squint.

IF the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it looke a squynt, then fyrst sette the cradell in suche a place, that the lyght maye come directly and ryght in the chyldes face, neyther in the one syde, neyther in the other, neither aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on whiche side that the eyes do goggle, and let the lyghte come vnto it on the

contrary syde, so to returne the syght. And in the nyght season sette a candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of diuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the colour of light greene, or yelowe, for the chylde shall haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours. And in returnyng the eye sight towarde suche thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, of the diseases of chyldren after they be borne, makyng here an ende of this third booke for this tyme.

Of such thinges the which shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke. Cap.i.

HEre in this fourth booke (by the leaue of God) shall briefly be declared suche thynges whiche may farther or hynder the conception of man, whiche as it may be by dyuers meanes letted and hyndered, so also by many other wayes, it maye be farthered and amended. Also to knowe by certayne signes and tokens, whether the woman be conceaued or no, and whether the conception be male or female, and finally certayne remedies and medicines to farther and helpe conception, and thereafter we wyll (accordyng to our promyse in the Prologue) set foorth certayne bellifying receptes, and so make an ende of this whole treatise.

Of conception, and how many wayes it may be hindred or letted. Cap. ii.

THere is nothing vnder heauen whiche so manyfest and playnely doeth declare and shewe the magnificent mightinesse of the omnipotent lyuing God, as doth the perpetuall and continuall generation and conception of lyuyng thinges here in earth, by the whiche is saued, prorroged, and augmented the kynde of all thinges. And where that this almyghtie Lorde and creature hath so institute and ordained, that no singuler thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth) shoulde continually remayne and abide: yet hath he geuen from the beginning and instincted such a power and vertue vnto these mortal creatures, that they may engender and produce other lyke thinges vnto them selfe, and vnto their owne similitude, in the which alway is saued the seede of posteritie. Were not this prouision had by almyghtie God, the nature and kinde of all maner of thinges woulde soone perishe and come to an ende, the which vertue and power of generation many times doth halte and misse, by defect and the contrary disposition in the partes generant:

As ye maye euidentlye see in the sowyng of corne and all other maner of seede, so that there be in all maner of generation three principall partes concurrent to the same, the sower, the seede sowen, and the receptacle or place receauyng

tyng and contaynyng the seede. Yf there be faulte in anye of these three, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto suche tyme as the faulte be remoued, or amended.

The earth vnto all seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contayning, clipping and embrasing them in her wombe, feeding and fosteryng them as the Mother doth the chylde in her belye or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto their nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceaued in the bowels of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer waterythe, dankithe, or ouer hoate and drye, or els full of stones, grauel, or other rubbithe, or ful of yll weedes, which may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng: also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyse viciate and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spirite of it vanished away and destroyed. The sower maye vnordinately strewe and caste the seede on the earth. &c. So that yf there be let in none of these partes concurrent to generation, or that the letters be remoued and done awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplication and encreasement of that kynde of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almyghtie God hath enplanted and sette in the kynde of all thynges.

Howe many wayes conception may be letted, and howe the causes may be knowen. Capit. iii.

Euery thyng then, the which doth encrease in this kind, must fyrst be conceaued in ỹ womb and Matrix of the Mother, whiche is apte and conuenient for the receate of such seede. And as I sayd before, as there may be defect and lacke in the Mother receauing the seede, so may there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the seede it selfe also.

And in women there may be foure generall causes, by the whiche the conception may be impedite and let: ouer muche caliditie or heate of the Matrix, ouermuch coldnes, ouermuche humiditie or moystnes, and ouermuch drynes. Any of these foure qualities exceadyng temperancie, may be sufficient causes to let due conception.

Wherefore the ryght excellent Philition Hipocrates in the. v. booke of his Amphorismes saith: All suche women the whiche haue colde and dense Matrices, can not conceaue, and suche as haue moyste and waterylhe Matrices can conceaue, for the power of the seede is extinguished in it. Also hauing drye Matrires, conceaue not, for the seede perisheth for lacke of due nutriment and foode: but that Matrix the which hath all these qualities in temperauncie, that is fruitefull. This is Hipocrates saying, the which thyng

also

also may be well perceaued by a familier exam-
ple of the sowyng of corne.

For yf it be sowen in ouer colde places, suche as be in the partes of a countrey called Sithia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall snowe or frosse, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowen, wyll neuer come to proofe, nor fructifie, but through the vehement coldnesse of the place, in the whiche it is conceaued, the lyfe and quicknesse of the grayne is vtterlye destroyed and annihilate.

And farther as concernyng ouer muche humiditie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or maryshe and watery grounde, the seede wyll perishe through the ouermuche aboundaunce of water, whiche extinguisheth the liuelynesse and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Lykewyse yf it be sowen in such a countrey or place where is ouer great heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yere be so drye, that there came no rayne at all to alaye the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne: then shall the seede sowen, wyther and drye awaye, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

Also yf it be sowen in drye places, where neuer commeth rayne, or on the sande, and grauely places, in suche a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceaued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore yf the Matrix be distempered, by

the

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it againe to temperauncie, by such remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man: as yf the seede be ouer hotte, the whiche the woman shall feele as it were burnyng hot, or to colde, the which she shall feele as it were in maner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne. &c. Diuers other wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not neede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceaue, the cause comming of ouermuche frigiditie or coldenesse in the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these tokens. She shall feele great colde about the sides, the raynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her vrine shall appeare whyte and thinnishe, and sometimes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thinges shall noy her, hotte thinges shall greatly comfort her.

But yf it come by ouermuche humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these signes. If the bodye of her be of a fat & grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue footh at the begynnyng and the latter ende of them certayne viscous and watery substaunce, and that her vryne be white, thicke, and sometyme as it were mylke. Also that she feele great colde and payne about the Matrix and priuie partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the raynes of her backe.

And when ouermuch heate or dryth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception, then is the vrine hye coloured, redde, or yelowe,

lowe, beyng thinne, with certayne motes appearing in the water: the woman hath greate thyrst, and bytter ryſing or belchynges out of the ſtomache into the mouth. And many tymes they that are in this caſe, are very ſpare and leane in all their bodye, hauing alſo but ſmall quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng maye happen eyther by ouer muche watche, or ouermuch faſtyng, labour, trauaile, ſorowe, ſickeneſſe. &c. But ſuche women whiche naturally are thus ſpare and leane, may very hardlye be brought to a temperancie agayne, and be made apt to conceaue. And this ſhalbe ſufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his exceſſe cauſeth ſterilitie. Nowe wyll we ſhew how it ſhalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and how to knowe whether the woman be conceaued or no, accordyng to the mynde of ryght expert Phiſitions.

Howe to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceaued whether ſhe be conceaued or no. Cap. iiii.

If ye be deſirous to know whether the man or the woman be hinderaunce in conception: Let eche of them take of wheate

Wheate and Barlye cornes, and of Beanes of eche .vii. the which they shall suffer to be steeped in their seuerall vryne the space of twentie and foure houres: then take two pottes, such as they set Geliflowres in, fill them with good earth, and in the one let be sette the Wheate, Barlye, and Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the other the Wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped in the womans water, and euery morning the space of .viii. or .x. dayes, let eche of them with their proper vryne water the saide seedes sowen in the forsayde pottes: and marke whose potte doth proue, and the seedes therein contayned doth growe, in that partie is not the lacke of conception: and see that there come no other water or rayne on the pottes: but trust not much this farre fet experiment.

Item, according to Hipocrates wryting, yf ye wyll know whether the faulte be in the woman or no, then let the woman receaue into her body vnderneath, beyng well and closely closed round about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as Laudanum, Storax calamite, Lignum Aloes, Muske, Ambre, and such other: and yf the odour and sauour of suche thinges ascende thorowe her body vp vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande that sterilitie commeth not of the womans parte: yf not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf she take Garlicke beyng pilled out of the huskes, and conuaye of it into the priuie partes, and yf the sent of it ascende vppe thorowe the bodye vnto the nose, the woman is

lautleſſe: yf not, then is there lacke in her. Theſe tokens, although they haue a certayne reaſon and appearaunce, yet be they not alwayes infallible, but only likely.

To knowe whether the woman be conceaued, or no.

Whether ſhe be conceaued alredy or no, ye ſhal knowe by theſe ſignes. Firſt the flowres iſſue not in ſo great quantitie as they are wont, but ware leſſe and leſſe, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Alſo the bꝛeſtes begin to ware rounder, harder, and ſtyffer then they were wont to be: the woman ſhall long after certayne thynges, otherwyſe then ſhe was vſed to do before that tyme. Alſo her vꝛyne wareth ſpyſſe and thyckyſhe by retention of the ſuperfluities. Alſo the woman feeleth her Matrix very faſtly and cloſely ſhutte, inſomuche that as Hipocrates ſayth, the poynt of a needle may ſcaſe enter.

Item, to knowe whether ſhe be conceaued or no, accoꝛdyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the .v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when ſhe is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of Mellicratum to dꝛynke, and yf after that dꝛynke ſhe feele great payne, gnawyng, and tumblyng in her bellye, then be ye ſure that ſhe is conceaued. This Mellicratum is a dꝛinke, made of one part wine, another part water, ſodden together, with a quantitie of hony.

But yf ye be deſyꝛous to knowe whether the conception be man oꝛ woman, then let a dꝛoppe of her mylke oꝛ twayne be mylked on a ſmothe glaſſe, oꝛ a bꝛyght knyfe, other els on the nayle of

of one of her fyngers, and yf the mylke flewe and ſpreade abrode vpon it by and by, then is it a woman chylde: but yf the drop of Mylke continue and ſtande ſtyll vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a ſigne of a man chylde.

Item if it be a male, then ſhal the woman with chylde be well colored, and lyght in goyng, her belly rounde, bigger towarde the right ſyde, then the left (for commonly the man chylde lyeth in the ryght ſide, the woman in the lefte ſide) and in the tyme of her bearyng ſhe ſhal better digeſt and lyke her meate, her ſtomacke nothyng ſo queſye ne feble.

Of certayne remedies and medicines which may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.

ALl ſterilitie then for the moſt part enſueth and commeth of the diſtemperauncie of one of theſe foure forenamed qualities, wherfore the remedie and cure of the ſame when it chaunceth, muſte be done by ſuch thinges the which haue contrary power & operation to the exceſſiue qualitie, for by that ſhall it be reduced to his temperauncie agayne.

As yf that coldneſſe and moiſtneſſe exceading temperauncie in the Matrix be occaſion of ſterilitie, then muſte ſhe applie ſuche thinges to that place the whiche be of nature hot and drye, the whiche may califie and warme the place, and alſo drye vp the yll moyſtnes and humours conteyned

ned in the same, hyndering conception.

And forbecause that the moste generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceede of colde, watersyne, and flegmatiche humours, whiche bedeawyng the inner sides and holonesse of the Matrix, with the porte and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrix, can not there remayne ne cleaue: neither is the mouth or port of the wombe apte or able to close it selfe sufficiently after the reception of the seede, the slewmie and slimie humours withstandyng it, the which vnlesse they be discussed, or dryed away, the seede alway slippeth and slideth foorth as faste as it entreth in.

Wherefore to remedie and to do away the forsayde impediment, ye shall vse the meanes whiche foloweth.

Fyrste, within a day or two after the womans Termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Phisition take a purgation, whiche may purge slewme and watersynes, and then the next or the thirde day after, let her sit in a bath vp almoste to the Nauill, in the whiche bath ye shall decocte and seethe these hearbes folowyng. Take of Bay leaues, Mallowes, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomell, Moioram, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage three handfulles, of Mercurie and Brankursin of eche two handfulles, seethe all these hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water, and the other halfe redde wine,

wine, in this bath let her remayne the space of a good halfe houre, and a litle before that she come fourth of the bath, geue her to drinke of this electuarie folowyng.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Galyngall, Cinamome, and long pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annise seede the wayght of two grotes, of Sage leaues dryed the wayght of three grotes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small powder, temper them altogether in so much pure claryfied Honye as maye be sufficient to receaue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fine Suger as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grotes, with .viii. ix. or .x. sponefulles of good whyte or claret wine, other els with good Malueseye or Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornyng one houre before breakefast or dyner, other els .v. or .vii. houres after dyner, so that it be not done vppon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornyng, then at nyght three or foure houres after supper, let her receaue vnderneath her clothes, the vapour of these thinges folowyng into the priuitie. Take of Lauender dryed, of vnset Tyme, Bay berries, Iuie leaues, of eche halfe a litle handfull, of whyte Frankencense the wayght of foure grotes, of Sage dryed, or other two litle handfulles of Rosemarye

leaues

leaues one handfull, seethe these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour thereof, sitting groueling, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or cunduite, thorowe the which the vapour may be directed into the womans priuie passage, the neere thereby, that the vertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyppe wooll, or els fyne lynnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priuie passage, there to remayne the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuarye, and vapour, I counsell them that haue neede to vse them the space of three dayes continually, and then the thyrde nyght to companye with her husbande, and by the grace of GOD she shalbe spedde. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath onlye, or the electuarye alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedye haue ben aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, worketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceedyng of colde, moyste, and flegmatike humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperancie in heate and dryth: then let her be purged of coller, or other vnkynd heate bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then afterwarde to vse bathes, electuaries, and vapours, of moderately coolyng thynges, as of Roses, Violettes, Letuse, Purs-

layne, Plantaine, and dyuers other.

But forasmuch that moste commonly the vnaptitude of conception (in women hauyng theyr health) springeth of the superfluitie of colde and moyst humours (whereof we haue alredye spoken) therefore all other impedimentes lefte a part, ye shall holde ye content with this for this tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all the occasions whereby conception may be let or impedite, then shoulde I here alleadge and bryng in all the diseases that may happen to a woman in that partes, with the remedies thereof, whiche were a long worke, and not proper for this volume.

In this vi Chapter is entreated of diuers bellifyng receptes, as ye may hereafter reade.

THE embellishing or bellifyng medicines whereof I entende to speake here, be not to be vnderstanden to be of that sort, whereby any Adlititicious or outwarde forraigne beautie or set colours shoulde be acquired or gotten, the which farre fet & damnable curiositie, I doubt not but that all honest and vertuous sadde women do vtterly abhorre and contemne: but here myne only meanyng is, to shewe howe to remoue certayne blemyshes, and as it were weedes of the bodye, through the whiche many tymes the naturall beautie thereof is obscured and defaced. For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer so beauti-

beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes entermynglyng them selues among the good hearbes, wyll defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well diligented and pyked, yet alwayes therein wyll remayne some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche euer when tyme or season serueth, nature thrusteth foorth.

Lyke wyse in the bodye of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of yll and not necessarye humours, with the whiche nature beyng offended and cloyed, expelleth and dryueth them foorth sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, accordyng to the aptitude or feeblenesse in resistaunce of the place receauyng it, and the force or violencie of nature (therewith greeued) sendyng it, so that the superfluities founde in the vpper part and face or superficie of the skynne, ensueth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter conteyned and commixed in the vaynes among the blood, and is a great euidence and testimonie thereof. But here I wyll not speake of all kyndes of vtter diseases spryngyng of this inwarde corrupted humours, but onlye of suche thynges as commonlye chaunce to men and women without any imperyshment of theyr health.

As for example, kyttle I wyll breefely declare the fylthynesse of the head, called in latin Perrigo,

in Englishe, the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembyng and cratchyng of the head, certayne whyte scales, as it were branne, falleth of from the head, and lyeth very thicke among and vnder the heere.

¶ Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

THE cause of this Dandruffe commeth by aboundaunce of fleumatike humours, commixt with the blood, the which dayly and hourely by vncessible sweatyng, euaporateth and issueth foorth of the pores, in the skinne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth foorth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skinne, and there remaynyng and gatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helpyng the forest of heere which coureth, harbereth and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no heere groweth. And most commonlye they that haue blacke heere, haue more store of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffered ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the heeres, makyng them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in kembyng. And although this superfluitie be not cleanly, yet notwithstandyng it shall be no wisedome for me to teache, ne any other herewith encombred, to learne howe to stoppe it, for feare of farther inconueniences, but onely I counsell you once in ten dayes at the least, to

walhe

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye, wherin let be steeped in a lynnen bagge of Annis seede, Cummin, dryed Rosemarie, Fenugreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke much: and beware that after the washynge of your head ye take no colde, before the head be perfectly dryed.

And whereas some say, that they whiche vse ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in suche that after they haue ben washed, roll vp theyr hayre (beyng yet wette) about theyr heades, the colde whereof is daungerous to bryng them to Catarrhes and poses, with other inconueniences. Wherfore all diligence must be had, that the head may be exactly well dryed with warme clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washynge, and then neuer feare no inconueniences, but rather conuenience and commoditie: and let this be done also fastyng in the mornyng, or els one houre before supper, or .v. houres after supper: this ofte washyng shall purifye the skynne of the head, and stedfaste the hayre from fallyng, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the senses therein conteyned, and greatlye comfort the braynes.

To take away hayre from places where it is vnseemely.

ITem, sometymes hayre groweth in places vnseemely, and out of order: as in many maydens and women the hayre groweth so lowe

in the foreheades and the temples, that it disfigureth them: for this ye maye vse three wayes to remoue them, eyther to plucke vp one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther els with this lye folowyng. Take newe burnt Lyme foure ounces, of Arsenecke an ounce, steepe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to prooue whether it be perfect, dyppe a feather therein, and yf the plume of the feather depart of easyly, then is it strong enough: with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from hayre, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre pluck at the hayres, and they wyll folowe, and then walhe that place muche with water wherein branne hath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Oliue, beaten and mixt together with the iuyce of Singrene or Purslane, to alaye the heate engendred of the forelayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue hayre, is with a plaster made of very dry pytche, and vppon leather applyed to the place, the hayres beyng fyrste shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Cysers.

Nowe when the hayres be vp by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a groate, and dissolue it in two spoonefulles of the iuyce of Nyghtshade, or of Henbane, and therewithall annoynte the

place

place two or three tymes euery day, the space of ix. or x. dayes, and hayre wyll growe no more in that place.

To do away Frekens or other spottes in the face.

These Frekens and such other spottes in the face or other where in the bodye, may be taken away by often annoyntyng them with the oyle of Tarter, to be founde alwayes at the Apothecaries, and surely that oyle is soueraigne for that purpose.

Item, take Elebozus, and seeth of it an ounce in halfe a pynt of strong whyte vineger, tyll halfe be consumed, then myxte therewith Hony three spoonefulles, and the wayght of a penye of Mercury sublimid, (to be had at the Apothecaries) and seethe these together agayne tyll it become thicke: with this annoynt the Frekens, and it wyll destroy them. This is also very good for the Morphewe, and other discolozation or staynyng of the skynne.

To destroy Wartes and suche lyke excrescences on the face or els where.

FOR this purpose nothyng is so excellent as euery day once, the space of three or foure dayes, to droppe one droppe of strong water, called Aqua fortis, on them, for this destroyeth them in very short tyme.

Item, the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce of Marygoldes is very good for the same.

Item, dissolue a lytle Mercury sublimid in fayre

fayre water, and therwith drop the Wartes, and they wyll soone wither and consume away.

To cleare and clarifie the skyn in the handes, face, or other part of the body.

FOR this is nothyng better then to take one spoonefull of the oyle of Tarter, and sixe spoonefulles of water, with these commixed together, washe the handes, face, and other partes, for it scoureth, cleanseth, and purifyeth the skinne soueraignely, and wyll suffer no fylthynesse to remayne in the pores of the flesshe, and this oyle of Tarter is made on this wyse.

Take wine lyes dryed, the whiche the Goldesmythes do call Arguyl, and beate it into powder, and then fyll thereof a Goldesmythes crudyble, and set it among hoate coales, tyll the Arguyl begyn to ware blacke: then take it out of the fyre and let it coole, and bynde it in a lynnen cloute, and hange it a lyttle ouer the vapour of hoate boylyng water: that done, hange this cloute with the Arguyl in a glasse with a broade mouth, so that the bagge or cloute touche not the bottome of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Tarter wyll droppe downe a lyttle and lyttle: and the sooner, yf it stande in a very colde and moyste sellar.

Item, to scoure the handes and the body, some vse to washe theyr handes with the powder of Orelle, which is the roote of the blewe Flourede luce, and some with Beane flowre.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good for that purpose, and so is hony.

¶ To

To ſouple and mollifie the ruggednelle of the ſkynne.

ANnoynt the ſkyn with the oyle of ſweete Almondes, the ſame is verye good alſo for chyppynges of the lyppes or handes.

Item, Deere ſuet is very proper for the ſame purpoſe, eſpecially beyng well waſhed and tempered with Roſe water, wherein hath ben diſſolued two or three graynes of pure Muſke.

¶ Againſt ſodayne ryſynges of pymples, through vnkynde heate, in the face or els where.

TAke the whyte of an egge, and beate it well with a ſpoone, and then therwith commixe two ſpoonefuls of Salet oyle, one ſpoonefull of Roſe water, another of the iuyce of Sorell, & halfe a lyttle ſpoonefull of Vineger, herewith annoynt the pimples and ryſynges.

To kepe and preſerue the teeth cleane.

FIrſt yf they be very yelowe and filthy, or blackyſhe, let a Barber ſcoure, rubbe, and pycke them cleane and whyte, then after to mayntayne them cleane, it ſhalbe verye good to rubbe them euerye day with the roote of a Mallowe, and to pyke them cleane that no meate remayne and putrifie betweene the teeth.

Item, take of the ſmall whyte pybble ſtones which be founde by the water ſides, and beate thē in very ſmall powder, hereof take an ounce, and of Maſticke one dram, myngle them together

ther, and with this powder once in. xiiii. dayes rub exactly your teeth, and this shall kepe your teeth fayre and whyte, but beware ye touche not, ne vexe the gummes therewithall.

Item, to stable and stedfaste the teethe, and to kepe the gummes in good case, it shalbe verye good euery day in the mornyng, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

Of stynkyng breath.

STinch of the breath commeth eyther by occasion bread in the mouth, or elsin the stomack. If it come from the stomache, then the body must be purged by the farther aduyse of a Phisition. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then moste commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted hollowe teeth, whiche in this case must be plucked out, and the gummes well scoured and washed with Vineger wherein hath ben sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanlye keepyng of the teeth doth conferre muche to the sauerinesse of the mouth.

Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes.

THis vice in many persons is verye tedious and lothsome: the remedie whereof is, to purge fyrste the colericke and egre inmours, originall causers of the same, and afterwarde to washe the armeholes oftentymes with the water wherein Wormwood hath ben sodden together with Camomell, and a lytle quantitie of Alome.

Item,

Item Authors do wryte, that the rootes of Artichaukes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in whyte wine & so dronke, doth clense the stenche of the armeholes and other partes of the bodye by the urine. For (as Galen also doth testifie) he prouoketh copie and plentie of stynkyng and vnclauerie urine from all partes of the bodye, the whiche propertie it hath by speciall gyfte, and not only by his hoate qualitie. And thus here I make an ende of this fourth and last booke.

FINIS.

1565.